

GRAMMAR

LATIN









# LATIN

GRAMMAR

ROBERT J. HENLE, S.J.

---

This One



LQJ0-46Q-4CNZ

LOYOLAPRESS.

CHICAGO

**LOYOLAPRESS.**

3441 N. ASHLAND AVENUE  
CHICAGO, ILLINOIS 60657

© 1958

Copyright 1945

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 58-10997

ISBN-13: 978-0-8294-0112-7

ISBN-10: 0-8294-0112-1

Printed in the United States of America.

10 11 12 Sher 20 19 18 17 16 15

# CONTENTS

## PART 1 FORMS

---

INTRODUCTORY . . . . .	1
NOUNS . . . . .	3
ADJECTIVES . . . . .	14
ADVERBS . . . . .	25
NUMERALS . . . . .	28
PRONOUNS . . . . .	32
VERBS . . . . .	40
The four regular conjugations . . . . .	43
Active voice . . . . .	43
Passive voice . . . . .	55
<i>-iō</i> verbs of the third conjugation . . . . .	67
Deponent verbs . . . . .	71
Irregular verbs . . . . .	76

## PART 2 SYNTAX

---

ORDER OF WORDS . . . . .	84
RULES OF AGREEMENT . . . . .	86
MAIN CLAUSES . . . . .	89
Use of the tenses of the indicative . . . . .	89
Kinds of main clauses . . . . .	93
Statements . . . . .	93
Direct questions . . . . .	94
Deliberative questions . . . . .	96

Wishes . . . . .	96
Jussive subjunctive . . . . .	98
Commands in the second person . . . . .	98
Hortatory subjunctive . . . . .	99
Concessive subjunctive . . . . .	99
<b>SUBORDINATE CLAUSES . . . . .</b>	<b>100</b>
<b>Tenses in subordinate clauses . . . . .</b>	<b>100</b>
Tense by sense . . . . .	100
Tense by sequence . . . . .	101
Tenses in statements of general truths or repeated action . . . . .	106
<b>Adverbial clauses . . . . .</b>	<b>109</b>
Purpose clauses . . . . .	109
Result clauses . . . . .	110
Temporal clauses . . . . .	112
Causal clauses . . . . .	117
Conditional sentences . . . . .	120
Clauses expressing a proviso or a conditional wish . . . . .	124
Adversative and concessive clauses . . . . .	124
Clauses of comparison . . . . .	125
Conditional clauses of comparison . . . . .	128
Subjunctive by attraction . . . . .	129
<b>Adjective clauses . . . . .</b>	<b>130</b>
Relative clauses . . . . .	130
Characteristic clauses . . . . .	135
<b>Noun clauses . . . . .</b>	<b>136</b>
Clauses introduced by <i>ut, ut nōn, nē, ut nē</i> . . . . .	136
Noun clauses after verbs of fearing . . . . .	137
Noun <i>nē</i> -clauses . . . . .	138
Noun clauses introduced by <i>quōminus</i> . . . . .	139
Noun <i>quīn</i> -clauses . . . . .	140
Noun <i>quod</i> -clauses . . . . .	141
Indirect questions . . . . .	142
Indirect discourse . . . . .	143
<b>THE CASES . . . . .</b>	<b>148</b>
The nominative . . . . .	148
The vocative . . . . .	148

<b>The genitive as an adjective-equivalent . . . . .</b>	<b>149</b>
The possessive genitive . . . . .	149
The explanatory genitive . . . . .	149
The subjective genitive . . . . .	150
The objective genitive . . . . .	151
The partitive genitive . . . . .	151
The descriptive genitive . . . . .	153
<b>The genitive as an adverb-equivalent . . . . .</b>	<b>155</b>
The genitive of indefinite value . . . . .	155
The genitive with verbs . . . . .	156
The genitive of the charge . . . . .	159
Other verbs governing the genitive . . . . .	159
Genitive with adjectives . . . . .	160
<b>The dative . . . . .</b>	<b>162</b>
The dative of possession . . . . .	162
The dative of reference . . . . .	162
The dative of purpose . . . . .	163
The double dative . . . . .	164
Dative of agency . . . . .	164
The dative of limit of motion . . . . .	165
The dative of the indirect object . . . . .	165
The dative after compound verbs . . . . .	165
The dative after intransitive verbs . . . . .	166
Dative with adjectives . . . . .	167
Dative with verbs of separation . . . . .	167
<b>The accusative as part of the predicate . . . . .</b>	<b>168</b>
The accusative as object . . . . .	168
The double accusative . . . . .	168
Accusative of neuter pronouns and adjectives . . . . .	170
The cognate accusative . . . . .	171
<b>The accusative as an adverb-equivalent . . . . .</b>	<b>172</b>
The accusative in exclamations . . . . .	172
The accusative of specification . . . . .	172
The accusative of extent of space and time . . . . .	172
<b>The ablative as an adjective-equivalent . . . . .</b>	<b>173</b>
The ablative of description . . . . .	173

The ablative as an adverb-equivalent . . . . .	173
The ablative of the agent . . . . .	173
The ablative of means . . . . .	174
The ablative of separation . . . . .	174
The ablative of manner . . . . .	175
The ablative of respect . . . . .	175
The ablative of degree of difference . . . . .	176
The ablative of accompaniment . . . . .	176
The ablative with adjectives . . . . .	177
The ablative of comparison . . . . .	177
The ablative of cause . . . . .	178
The ablative as object . . . . .	179
The ablative of price . . . . .	179
PRONOUNS . . . . .	180
Demonstrative pronouns . . . . .	180
Reflexive pronouns . . . . .	182
The intensive pronoun . . . . .	184
<i>Īdem, eadem, idem</i> . . . . .	186
Some . . . . .	186
One . . . other (another) . . . . .	188
One . . . . .	189
Other . . . . .	190
Each . . . . .	191
Anyone; any . . . . .	193
ADJECTIVES . . . . .	195
Special uses of adjectives . . . . .	195
Comparative adjectives . . . . .	196
Superlative adjectives . . . . .	197
VERBAL NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES . . . . .	198
The supine . . . . .	198
In <i>-um</i> . . . . .	198
In <i>-ū</i> . . . . .	198
The gerund . . . . .	199
The gerundive . . . . .	200
The gerundive construction . . . . .	200
The attributive gerundive as a substitute for the gerund . . . . .	201

The gerundive as a predicate adjective with <i>sum</i> . . . . .	203
The gerundive as a predicate adjective with other verbs . . . . .	206
Tenses of the infinitive and the participle . . . . .	207
Tense by relation . . . . .	207
The infinitive . . . . .	210
The infinitive in noun constructions . . . . .	210
The accusative with the infinitive after verbs of saying, think- ing, and the like . . . . .	213
The infinitive in exclamations . . . . .	216
Historical infinitive . . . . .	216
The infinitive after adjectives . . . . .	216
The participle . . . . .	217
The ablative absolute . . . . .	219
RULES FOR PLACE . . . . .	221
Where? . . . . .	221
Whence? . . . . .	221
Whither? . . . . .	221
RULES FOR TIME . . . . .	223
How long? . . . . .	223
When? . . . . .	223
Within? . . . . .	223
How long ago? . . . . .	224
How long before or after? . . . . .	224
PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	225
METHOD OF DIAGRAMMING . . . . .	236
APPENDIX . . . . .	241
Pronunciation . . . . .	241
Notes on verbs . . . . .	243
INDEX . . . . .	245





## PART 1

## FORMS

### INTRODUCTORY

- 1**    **The Alphabet.** The Latin alphabet has no *w* or *y*; otherwise it is the same as the English.

**Pronunciation.**<sup>1</sup> The Latin letters are pronounced as follows:

- |          |                                 |                                  |
|----------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>2</b> | <b>Vowels:</b> <i>Long</i>      | <i>Short</i>                     |
|          | <i>ā</i> as in <i>father</i> ;  | <i>a</i> as in <i>facility</i> ; |
|          | <i>ē</i> as in <i>they</i> ;    | <i>e</i> as in <i>get</i> ;      |
|          | <i>ī</i> as in <i>machine</i> ; | <i>i</i> as in <i>fit</i> ;      |
|          | <i>ō</i> as in <i>no</i> ;      | <i>o</i> as in <i>obey</i> ;     |
|          | <i>ū</i> as in <i>rule</i> .    | <i>u</i> as in <i>put</i> .      |

- 3**    **Note:** Very often in practice the difference between the long and short vowels is ignored, all of them being given the quality of long vowels. In reading poetry a quantitative difference alone is then maintained between long and short vowels.

- 4**    **Diphthongs:**
- |           |   |                                |
|-----------|---|--------------------------------|
| <i>ae</i> | } | like <i>e</i> in <i>they</i> ; |
| <i>oe</i> |   |                                |
| <i>au</i> |   | like <i>ou</i> in <i>out</i> . |

- 5**    **Consonants:**

Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English, but *c* and *g* are soft before *e*, *i*, *ae*, *oe*; otherwise hard.

Hard *c* as in *cat*; soft *c* as in *cell*.

Hard *g* as in *gun*; soft *g* as in *germ*.

*j* is pronounced like *y* as in *yet*.

---

<sup>1</sup>For the Roman and Italian systems see Nos. 1018-19. The system here given is called the Continental or Traditional System.

**Division into Syllables.**

- 6 a. A single consonant goes with the following vowel.  
mā/ter; nau/ta; nō/men
- 7 b. Two or more consonants are divided after the first.  
por/ta; exer/citus; pul/chra
- 8 Note: But when a mute (c, g, p, b, t, d) or f is followed by r or l, both consonants go with the following vowel.  
la/crima; a/grum; pa/trem; va/fra; locu/plēs

**Accent.**

- 9 a. In words of two syllables the accent is on the first.  
vía; béllum
- 10 b. In words of more than two syllables, if the second last syllable is long it is accented; otherwise the accent is on the third last syllable.  
vidérunt; ágmine

**Quantity of Syllables.**

- 11 a. A syllable is short if it contains a vowel that is short by nature or that is followed by another vowel or diphthong.  
regere; gloriā
- 12 b. A syllable is long if it contains a vowel that is long by nature<sup>1</sup> or a vowel that is followed by two consonants other than a mute (c, g, p, b, t, d) or f followed by a liquid (r, l).  
studēre; regendus
- 13 Note: x and z each count as two consonants (cs and ds); h and the u in qu do not count as consonants.

<sup>1</sup>In this GRAMMAR and in its companion volumes all vowels long by nature are marked, as: *studēre*. Otherwise they are unmarked.

## NOUNS

- 14 **Nouns** have gender, number, case, and declension.
- 15 **Gender.** There are three genders in Latin: masculine, feminine, neuter.
- 16 All nouns meaning individual male persons are masculine.
- 17 All nouns meaning individual female persons are feminine.
- 18 The gender of other nouns must be learned from their declension or from the vocabularies.
- 19 **Number.** There are two numbers in Latin: singular and plural.
- 20 The singular speaks of one: *via, a road*.
- 21 The plural speaks of more than one: *viae, roads*.
- 22 **Case.** There are six cases in Latin:
- Nominative:** the case of the **Subject**.
  - Genitive:** the case of the **Possessor**.
  - Dative:** the case of the **Indirect Object**; the 'to' or 'for' case.
  - Accusative:** the case of the **Direct Object**.
  - Ablative:** the 'by-with-from' case [used *frequently* with prepositions].
  - Vocative:** the case of the **Person Addressed**.
- 23 **Declension.** Declension consists in adding the proper **ENDINGS** to the **STEM** to show the different genders, numbers, and cases.
- 24 **Stem.** The stem is found by dropping the **ENDING** of the **GENITIVE SINGULAR**.
- vi-ae, stem: vi-**

- 25 The Five Declensions.** There are five declensions in Latin. They can be distinguished by the endings of the genitive singular.

1	2	3	4	5
-ae	-ī	-is	-ūs	-eī
vi-ae	serv-ī	lēg-is	port-ūs	r-eī

- 26 How to Decline a Noun.** The nominative, genitive, and gender of a noun determine which model it follows. Add the endings of that model to the stem.

**Note:**

- 27 a.** The **stem** is that part of the word which remains the same in spelling throughout the declension. It gives the **meaning** of the word. The **endings** show what the word does in the sentence, whether it is the subject, direct object, indirect object, *etc.*
- 28 b.** The vocative of all nouns and adjectives is always like the nominative except in singular nouns in **-us** of the second declension: these have **-e**. **Serv-e!** *Slave!* **Exceptions:** Proper nouns in **-ius** and **filius**, *son*, have only **-ī** in the vocative singular. **Vergilius**, voc. **Vergilī**; **filius**, voc. **fili**. The vocative singular of **Deus**, *God*, is **Deus**; the vocative masculine singular of **meus** is **mī**; **fili mī**! *my son!*
- 29 c.** The accusative of neuter nouns and adjectives is always like the nominative.
- 30 d.** Names of towns, and **domus**, *home*, and **rūs**, *country*, have another case—the locative—expressing place where. In singulars of the first and second declensions the locative is like the genitive: **Rōmae**, *at Rome*. In all others it is like the ablative: **Carthāgine** (**Carthāgō**, **Carthāginis**), *at Carthage*. But **rūs**, *country*, has **rūrī** or **rūre**, *in the country*. See No. 915.

31 The First Declension.

		<i>Form</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Use</i>
S.	{	<i>Nom.</i> terr-a	land, the (a) <sup>1</sup> land	subject
		<i>Gen.</i> terr-ae	of the (a) land	possessive
		<i>Dat.</i> terr-ae	to or for the (a) land	indirect object
		<i>Acc.</i> terr-am	the (a) land	direct object
		<i>Abl.</i> terr-ā	by, with, from the (a) land	
P.	{	<i>Nom.</i> terr-ae	lands, the lands	subject
		<i>Gen.</i> terr-ārum	of the lands	possessive
		<i>Dat.</i> terr-īs	to or for the lands	indirect object
		<i>Acc.</i> terr-ās	lands, the lands	direct object
		<i>Abl.</i> terr-īs	by, with, from the lands	

Gender:<sup>2</sup>

- 32 a. All nouns naming individual male persons are masculine.  
nauta, ae, a sailor, masculine. (Sailors are usually *men*.)
- 33 b. All others are feminine.  
terra, ae, land, feminine.

<sup>1</sup>There is no article, definite (*the*) or indefinite (*a, an*) in Latin. *Terra*, therefore, translates 'land,' 'a land,' 'the land.'

<sup>2</sup>No gender will be indicated in the vocabularies for nouns following the rules given in the GRAMMAR; all others will have their gender indicated and should be so learned.

## 34 Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension.

	<i>Form</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Use</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i> serv-us	the slave <sup>1</sup>	subject
	<i>Gen.</i> serv-i <sup>2</sup>	of the slave, the slave's	possessive
	<i>Dat.</i> serv-ō	to or for the slave	indirect object
	<i>Acc.</i> serv-um	the slave	direct object
	<i>Abl.</i> serv-ō	by, with, from the slave	
P.	<i>Nom.</i> serv-ī	the slaves	subject
	<i>Gen.</i> serv-ōrum	of the slaves, the slaves'	possessive
	<i>Dat.</i> serv-īs	to or for the slaves	indirect object
	<i>Acc.</i> serv-ōs	the slaves	direct object
	<i>Abl.</i> serv-īs	by, with, from the slaves	

35 Gender: Generally masculine.

36 Note: Proper names in *-ius* and *filius*, *son*, form their vocative singular in *-ī*. Vergilius, Vergilī; filius, fili.<sup>1</sup>*Servus*, of course, may be translated either 'slave,' 'the slave,' or 'a slave.'<sup>2</sup>Nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* more properly have *i* in the genitive in place of *ī* (as *filius*, gen. *fili*; *ingenium*, gen. *ingeni*) but in the first two years of this course the full form in *ī* will be used. The accent in the contracted form remains where it was in the uncontracted form: *ingēniū*, *ingēni*.

## 37 Neuter Nouns of the Second Declension.

	<i>Form</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Use</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i> bell-um	<i>the war</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>subject</i>
	<i>Gen.</i> bell-ī	<i>of the war</i>	<i>possessive</i>
	<i>Dat.</i> bell-ō	<i>to or for the war</i>	<i>indirect object</i>
	<i>Acc.</i> bell-um	<i>the war</i>	<i>direct object</i>
	<i>Abl.</i> bell-ō	<i>by, with, from the war</i>	
P.	<i>Nom.</i> bell-a	<i>the wars</i>	<i>subject</i>
	<i>Gen.</i> bell-ōrum	<i>of the wars</i>	<i>possessive</i>
	<i>Dat.</i> bell-īs	<i>to or for the wars</i>	<i>indirect object</i>
	<i>Acc.</i> bell-a	<i>the wars</i>	<i>direct object</i>
	<i>Abl.</i> bell-īs	<i>by, with, from the wars</i>	

38 Gender: All neuter.<sup>2</sup>

39 Note: The accusative is like the nominative in all neuter nouns and adjectives. Thus, singular nom. bellum, acc. bellum; plural nom. bella, acc. bella. (Cf. flūmen, No. 64, gravis, e, No. 78, etc.)

<sup>1</sup>*Bellum*, of course, may be translated 'war,' 'the war,' or 'a war.'

<sup>2</sup>There are no exceptions.

- 40 **Vir, virī, man,** and words like **ager, agrī, field,** and **puer, puerī, boy,** belong to the second declension. (Note the genitive in **-ī**.) They are declined like **servus** except in the nominative (and vocative) singular. Thus:

41	vir	42	ager	43	puer
	vir-ī		agr-ī		puer-ī
	vir-ō		agr-ō		puer-ō
	vir-um		agr-um		puer-um
	vir-ō		agr-ō		puer-ō
	vir-ī		agr-ī		puer-ī
	vir-ōrum		agr-ōrum		puer-ōrum
	vir-īs		agr-īs		puer-īs
	vir-ōs		agr-ōs		puer-ōs
	vir-īs		agr-īs		puer-īs

- 44 **Deus, ī, God,** shows peculiarities in the underlined forms. The vocative singular is **Deus**.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	deus	<u>dī</u> (deī, <u>dīi</u> ) <sup>1</sup>
<i>Gen.</i>	deī	deōrum ( <u>deūm</u> )
<i>Dat.</i>	deō	<u>dīs</u> (deīs, <u>dīis</u> )
<i>Acc.</i>	deum	deōs
<i>Abl.</i>	deō	<u>dīs</u> (deīs, <u>dīis</u> )

<sup>1</sup>The forms in parentheses occur in some writers.



- 45 **The Third Declension.** The nominative singular of the third declension has no model ending. Thus *lēx*, *law*, *pars*, *part*, *flūmen*, *river*, *hostis*, *enemy*, are all nouns of the third declension. The genitive ending (for the third declension, always *-is*) shows the declension and gives the stem.

**Gender:<sup>1</sup>**

- 46 Nouns naming individual male persons are masculine:  
*mīles*, *militis*, *m.*, *soldier*
- 47 Nouns naming individual female persons are feminine:  
*māter*, *mātris*, *f.*, *mother*
- 48 **Note:** These two rules (Nos. 46, 47) should always be applied before Nos. 49 to 52. Thus *mīles* would be feminine by the SOX rule (No. 50), but rule No. 46 is applied first, hence *mīles* is masculine.
- 49 Nouns ending in *-er*, *-or* (**ERROR**) are masculine.
- 50 Nouns ending in *-s*, *-o*, *-x* (**SOX**) are feminine.
- 51 Nouns ending in *-l*, *-a*, *-n*, *-c*, *-e*, *-t* (**LANCET**) are neuter.
- 52 **Note:** But *masculinī generis*  
are words in *-os*, *-nis*, *-guis*, and *-cis*,  
in *-es* (*-itis*) and *-ex* (*-icis*);  
as neuter mark the *-us* (with *-ris*).
- 53 **Declension.** First find the gender of the noun. Then find the stem from the genitive.
- 54 For masculine and feminine nouns, add the endings of *lēx* or *pars* according to the rules in Nos. 59-63.
- 55 For neuter nouns add the endings of *flūmen*.<sup>2</sup>
- 56 The vocative is always like the nominative.

<sup>1</sup>When the gender of nouns follows rules Nos. 44 to 51, no gender will be given in the companion volumes; thus, *pars*, *partis* (*sox*). When nouns follow rule No. 52 or are altogether exceptional the gender will be given, thus, *tempus*, *temporis*, *n*.

<sup>2</sup>For the few exceptions see the footnote on No. 64.

### Masculine and Feminine Nouns of the Third Declension.

	57		58
S.	<i>Nom.</i> lēx	<i>the law</i>	<i>pars</i> <i>the part</i>
	<i>Gen.</i> lēg-is	<i>of the law</i>	<i>part-is</i> <i>of the part</i>
	<i>Dat.</i> lēg-ī	<i>to (for) the law</i>	<i>part-ī</i> <i>to (for) the part</i>
	<i>Acc.</i> lēg-em	<i>the law</i>	<i>part-em</i> <i>the part</i>
	<i>Abl.</i> lēg-e	<i>by, etc., the law</i>	<i>part-e</i> <i>by, etc., the part</i>
P.	<i>Nom.</i> lēg-ēs	<i>the laws</i>	<i>part-ēs</i> <i>the parts</i>
	<i>Gen.</i> lēg-um	<i>of the laws</i>	<i>part-ium</i> <i>of the parts</i>
	<i>Dat.</i> lēg-ibus	<i>to (for) the laws</i>	<i>part-ibus</i> <i>to (for) the parts</i>
	<i>Acc.</i> lēg-ēs	<i>the laws</i>	<i>part-ēs</i> <i>the parts</i>
	<i>Abl.</i> lēg-ibus	<i>by, etc., the laws</i>	<i>part-ibus</i> <i>by, etc., the parts</i>

59 **Note:** All masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension are declined like *lēx* except the following nouns which have *-ium* in the genitive plural like *part-ium*:

- 60 1. Nouns that have the same number of syllables in the genitive singular as in the nominative singular, as: *hostis*, *hostis* (*host-ium*), *enemy*.
- 61 2. Nouns whose stem ends in two consonants, as: *gēns*, *gentis*, *tribe*, *stem*, *gent-*, hence *gentium*.

#### Exceptions:

- 62 a. With *-um* instead of *-ium*: *senum*, *patrum*, *mēnsum*, *mātrum*, *canum*, *juvenum*, and *frātrum*.<sup>1</sup>
- 63 b. With *-ium* instead of *-um*: *vīrium*, *lītium*, *faucium*, *Penātium*, *imbrium* and *nivium*, *Samnītium*, *optimātium*.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>of old men, fathers, months and mothers, of dogs and youths, and brothers.

<sup>2</sup>of strength and quarrels, of jaws and household gods, of rains and snows, of Samnites and aristocrats.

## 64 Neuter Nouns of the Third Declension.

S.	Nom.	<b>flūmen<sup>1</sup></b>	<i>the river</i>
	Gen.	<b>flūmin-is</b>	<i>of the river</i>
	Dat.	<b>flūmin-ī</b>	<i>to or for the river</i>
	Acc.	<b>flūmen</b>	<i>the river</i>
	Abl.	<b>flūmin-e</b>	<i>by, with, from the river</i>
P.	Nom.	<b>flūmin-a</b>	<i>the rivers</i>
	Gen.	<b>flūmin-um</b>	<i>of the rivers</i>
	Dat.	<b>flūmin-ibus</b>	<i>to or for the rivers</i>
	Acc.	<b>flūmin-a</b>	<i>the rivers</i>
	Abl.	<b>flūmin-ibus</b>	<i>by, with, from the rivers</i>

<sup>1</sup>All neuter nouns of the third declension are declined like *flūmen* except the very few which end their nominative with *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*. These have *-ī* in the ablative singular, *-ia* in the nominative and accusative, plural, and *-ium* in the genitive plural. Thus *mare*, *maris* has ablative singular *mar-ī*, nominative and accusative plural *mar-ia*, and genitive plural *mar-ium*.

## 65 The Fourth Declension.

S.	Nom.	port-us	<i>the harbor</i>
	Gen.	port-ūs	<i>of the harbor</i>
	Dat.	port-uī	<i>to or for the harbor</i>
	Acc.	port-um	<i>the harbor</i>
	Abl.	port-ū	<i>by, with, from the harbor</i>
P.	Nom.	port-ūs	<i>the harbors</i>
	Gen.	port-uum	<i>of the harbors</i>
	Dat.	port-ibus	<i>to or for the harbors</i>
	Acc.	port-ūs	<i>the harbors</i>
	Abl.	port-ibus	<i>by, with, from the harbors</i>

66 **Gender:** All masculine except *manus, ūs, f., hand, domus, ūs, f., house, cornū, ūs, n., horn, genū, ūs, n., knee,* and a few others.

67 **Domus, ūs, f., house, home,** shows peculiarities in the underlined forms. The locative is *domī, at home* (Nos. 30, 915).

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	domus	domūs
<i>Gen.</i>	domūs	<u>domōrum</u> or domuum
<i>Dat.</i>	domuī	domibus
<i>Acc.</i>	domum	<u>domōs</u> or domūs
<i>Abl.</i>	<u>domō</u>	domibus

68 Neuter nouns of the fourth declension have *-ū* in the accusative singular (like the nominative) and *-ua* in the nominative and accusative plural.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	corn-ū	corn-ua
<i>Gen.</i>	corn-ūs	corn-uum
<i>Dat.</i>	corn-ū	corn-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	corn-ū	corn-ua
<i>Abl.</i>	corn-ū	corn-ibus

## 69 The Fifth Declension.

S.	{	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>the thing</i>
		<i>Gen.</i>	<i>r-eī</i>	<i>of the thing</i>
		<i>Dat.</i>	<i>r-eī</i>	<i>to or for the thing</i>
		<i>Acc.</i>	<i>r-em</i>	<i>the thing</i>
		<i>Abl.</i>	<i>r-ē</i>	<i>by, with, from the thing</i>
P.	{	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>r-ēs</i>	<i>the things</i>
		<i>Gen.</i>	<i>r-ērum</i>	<i>of the things</i>
		<i>Dat.</i>	<i>r-ēbus</i>	<i>to or for the things</i>
		<i>Acc.</i>	<i>r-ēs</i>	<i>the things</i>
		<i>Abl.</i>	<i>r-ēbus</i>	<i>by, with, from the things</i>

- 70 **Gender:** All feminine except *diēs*, *diēī* which is generally masculine. In the singular, however, when it means a set date or a "period of time" even *diēs* is often feminine. Certain nouns, such as *fidēs*, *f.*, *faith*, have no plural forms.

- 71 **Note:** The genitive and dative singular ending of the fifth declension is *ēī* instead of *eī* when the stem ends in a vowel, as *diēs*, stem, *di*, therefore *di-ēī*.

## ADJECTIVES

### 72 Adjectives in *-us* of the First and Second Declensions.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
	like	like	like
	<i>servus</i>	<i>porta</i>	<i>bellum</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i> magn-us	magn-a	magn-um
	<i>Gen.</i> magn-ī	magn-ae	magn-ī
	<i>Dat.</i> magn-ō	magn-ae	magn-ō
	<i>Acc.</i> magn-um	magn-am	magn-um
	<i>Abl.</i> magn-ō	magn-ā	magn-ō
P.	<i>Nom.</i> magn-ī	magn-ae	magn-a
	<i>Gen.</i> magn-ōrum	magn-ārum	magn-ōrum
	<i>Dat.</i> magn-īs	magn-īs	magn-īs
	<i>Acc.</i> magn-ōs	magn-ās	magn-a
	<i>Abl.</i> magn-īs	magn-īs	magn-īs

### 73 How to Decline an Adjective.

1. Learn the nominative and genitive<sup>1</sup> from the vocabularies.
2. These show what model the adjective follows.
3. Add the endings of this model to the stem.

<sup>1</sup>The genitive of adjectives is not given in vocabularies when it is clear from the nominative, as *magnus*, *a*, *um* (stem, *magn-*).

74 Adjectives in *-er* of the First and Second Declensions.

There are two other kinds of adjectives in the first and second declensions :

**miser, miser-a, miser-um** (stem, miser-), *wretched*

**integer, integr-a, integr-um** (stem, integr-), *fresh*

These adjectives have the same endings as **magnus** except in the nominative singular masculine (**miser, integer**).

		<i>Masc.</i> like <i>puer</i>	<i>Fem.</i> like <i>porta</i>	<i>Neut.</i> like <i>bellum</i>
75	S.	<i>Nom.</i> MISER	miser-a	miser-um
		<i>Gen.</i> miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-ī
		<i>Dat.</i> miser-ō	miser-ae	miser-ō
		<i>Acc.</i> miser-um	miser-am	miser-um
		<i>Abl.</i> miser-ō	miser-ā	miser-ō
	P.	<i>Nom.</i> miser-ī	miser-ae	miser-a
		<i>Gen.</i> miser-ōrum	miser-ārum	miser-ōrum
		<i>Dat.</i> miser-īs	miser-īs	miser-īs
		<i>Acc.</i> miser-ōs	miser-ās	miser-a
		<i>Abl.</i> miser-īs	miser-īs	miser-īs
		<i>Masc.</i> like <i>ager</i>	<i>Fem.</i> like <i>porta</i>	<i>Neut.</i> like <i>bellum</i>
76	S.	<i>Nom.</i> INTEGER	integr-a	integr-um
		<i>Gen.</i> integr-ī	integr-ae	integr-ī
		<i>Dat.</i> integr-ō	integr-ae	integr-ō
		<i>Acc.</i> integr-um	integr-am	integr-um
		<i>Abl.</i> integr-ō	integr-ā	integr-ō
	P.	<i>Nom.</i> integr-ī	integr-ae	integr-a
		<i>Gen.</i> integr-ōrum	integr-ārum	integr-ōrum
		<i>Dat.</i> integr-īs	integr-īs	integr-īs
		<i>Acc.</i> integr-ōs	integr-ās	integr-a
		<i>Abl.</i> integr-īs	integr-īs	integr-īs

## 77 Adjectives in *-is*, *-is*, *-e* of the Third Declension.

The most important kind of adjectives in the third declension has *-is*, *-is*, *-e* in the nominative.

**Gravis**, *e*,<sup>1</sup> *heavy, severe, serious*, is declined thus:

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i> grav- <b>is</b>	grav- <b>is</b>	grav- <b>e</b>
	<i>Gen.</i> grav- <b>is</b>	grav- <b>is</b>	grav- <b>is</b>
	<i>Dat.</i> grav- <b>ī</b>	grav- <b>ī</b>	grav- <b>ī</b>
	<i>Acc.</i> grav- <b>em</b>	grav- <b>em</b>	grav- <b>e</b>
	<i>Abl.</i> grav- <b>ī</b>	grav- <b>ī</b>	grav- <b>ī</b>
P.	<i>Nom.</i> grav- <b>ēs</b>	grav- <b>ēs</b>	grav- <b>ia</b>
	<i>Gen.</i> grav- <b>ium</b>	grav- <b>ium</b>	grav- <b>ium</b>
	<i>Dat.</i> grav- <b>ibus</b>	grav- <b>ibus</b>	grav- <b>ibus</b>
	<i>Acc.</i> grav- <b>ēs</b>	grav- <b>ēs</b>	grav- <b>ia</b>
	<i>Abl.</i> grav- <b>ibus</b>	grav- <b>ibus</b>	grav- <b>ibus</b>

## 79 Third Declension Adjectives of Three Endings.

**ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**,<sup>2</sup> *sharp, keen, eager* (stem, **ācr-**),

**celer**, **celeris**, **celere**,<sup>2</sup> *swift* (stem, **celer-**).

These are declined like **gravis**, *e*, except in *one* case—the nominative singular masculine (**ācer**, **celer**). Therefore:

a. Find the stem from the feminine, thus:

**ācris**; stem, **ācr-**; **celeris**; stem, **celer-**.

b. Add the endings of **gravis**, *e*.

<sup>1</sup>Adjectives of this kind will be given in the vocabularies thus: *gravis*, *e*, since the stem (*grav-*) is clear from the nominative.

<sup>2</sup>Adjectives of this class will always be given in the vocabularies thus: *ācer*, *ācris*, *ācre*. The stem can be derived from the feminine: *ācris*; stem, *ācr-*.



80		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
	S.	{ <i>Nom.</i>	ĀCER	ācr-is	ācr-e
		{ <i>Gen.</i>	ācr-is	ācr-is	ācr-is
		{ <i>Dat.</i>	ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ī
		{ <i>Acc.</i>	ācr-em	ācr-em	ācr-e
		{ <i>Abl.</i>	ācr-ī	ācr-ī	ācr-ī
	P.	{ <i>Nom.</i>	ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
		{ <i>Gen.</i>	ācr-ium	ācr-ium	ācr-ium
		{ <i>Dat.</i>	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus
		{ <i>Acc.</i>	ācr-ēs	ācr-ēs	ācr-ia
		{ <i>Abl.</i>	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus	ācr-ibus

## 81 Third Declension Adjectives of One Ending.

diligēns ( <i>gen. dīligentis</i> ) <sup>1</sup>	stem: dīligent-
pār ( <i>gen. paris</i> ) <sup>1</sup>	stem: par-
audāx ( <i>gen. audācis</i> ) <sup>1</sup>	stem: audāc-
praeceps ( <i>gen. praecipitis</i> ) <sup>1</sup>	stem: praecipit-

These adjectives are all declined like *gravis*, *e*, except in the nominative singular (which is the same in all three genders) and in the accusative singular neuter (which is always like the nominative).

82	S.	{	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
			<i>Nom.</i>	DĪLIGĒNS	DĪLIGĒNS	DĪLIGĒNS
			<i>Gen.</i>	diligent-is	diligent-is	diligent-is
			<i>Dat.</i>	diligent-ī	diligent-ī	diligent-ī
			<i>Acc.</i>	diligent-em	diligent-em	DĪLIGĒNS
	P.	{	<i>Abl.</i>	diligent-ī	diligent-ī	diligent-ī
			<i>Nom.</i>	diligent-ēs	diligent-ēs	diligent-ia
			<i>Gen.</i>	diligent-ium	diligent-ium	diligent-ium
			<i>Dat.</i>	diligent-ibus	diligent-ibus	diligent-ibus
			<i>Acc.</i>	diligent-ēs	diligent-ēs	diligent-ia
		{	<i>Abl.</i>	diligent-ibus	diligent-ibus	diligent-ibus

<sup>1</sup>Adjectives of this class will always be given in the vocabularies thus: *diligēns* (*gen. dīligentis*).

83 **Vetus** (*gen. veteris*), *old*, is declined like *lēx* and *flūmen*.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
	like	like	like
	<i>lēx</i>	<i>lēx</i>	<i>flūmen</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i>	<b>VETUS</b>	<b>VETUS</b>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<b>veter-is</b>	<b>veter-is</b>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<b>veter-ī</b>	<b>veter-ī</b>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<b>veter-em</b>	<b>vetus</b>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<b>veter-e</b>	<b>veter-e</b>
P.	<i>Nom.</i>	<b>veter-ēs</b>	<b>veter-a</b>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<b>veter-um</b>	<b>veter-um</b>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<b>veter-ibus</b>	<b>veter-ibus</b>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<b>veter-ēs</b>	<b>veter-a</b>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<b>veter-ibus</b>	<b>veter-ibus</b>

### Irregular Adjectives.

84 a. The following adjectives are declined like *ūnus*, *a*, *um* (No. 114) in the singular and like *magnī*, *ae*, *a* in the plural:

*sōlus*, *a*, *um*, *alone*

*tōtus*, *a*, *um*, *whole*

*ūllus*, *a*, *um*, *any* (*at all*)

*nūllus*, *a*, *um*, *no*, *not any*

Thus:	<i>Nom.</i>	<b>sōlus</b>	<b>sōla</b>	<b>sōlum</b>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<b>sōlīus</b>	<b>sōlīus</b>	<b>sōlīus</b>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<b>sōlī</b>	<b>sōlī</b>	<b>sōlī</b>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<b>sōlum</b>	<i>etc.</i>	

- 85 b. **Alius, alia, aliud, other, another**, is regular except in the underlined forms:

S.	Nom.	<b>alius</b>	<b>alia</b>	<u><b>aliud</b></u>
	Gen.	<u><b>alius</b></u>	<u><b>alius</b></u>	<u><b>alius</b></u>
	Dat.	<u><b>aliī</b></u>	<u><b>aliī</b></u>	<u><b>aliī</b></u>
	Acc.	<b>alium</b>	<b>aliam</b>	<u><b>aliud</b></u>
	Abl.	<b>aliō</b>	<b>aliā</b>	<b>aliō</b>
P.	Nom.	<b>ali-ī</b>	<b>ali-ae</b>	<b>ali-a</b>
		etc. (like magnī, ae, a)		

- 86 **Note:** The genitive singular **alius** is rarely used. The genitive singular of **alter, alterius**, or the adjective **aliēnus, a, um, belonging to another**, is used instead.

- 87 c. **Alter, altera, alterum, the other, one (of two), or the second**, is regular (like miser) except in the genitive and dative singular:

S.	Nom.	<b>alter</b>	<b>altera</b>	<b>alterum</b>
	Gen.	<b>alter-ius</b>	<b>alter-ius</b>	<b>alter-ius</b>
	Dat.	<b>alter-ī</b>	<b>alter-ī</b>	<b>alter-ī</b>
	Acc.	<b>alter-um</b>	<b>alter-am</b>	<b>alter-um</b>
		etc.		

- 88 d. **Neuter, neutra, neutrum, neither (of two)**, and the interrogative **uter, utra, utrum, which (of two)**, are declined like **alter, altera, alterum**.

**Comparison of Adjectives.**

89 The comparative of adjectives in English is formed either by using the adverb 'more' or by adding *-er* to the adjective.

90 The superlative of adjectives in English is formed either by using the adverb 'most' or by adding *-est* to the adjective :

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
certain	more certain	most certain
heavy	heavier	heaviest

In Latin :

91 To form the COMPARATIVE add *-ior, -ius* to the STEM of the positive.

92 To form the SUPERLATIVE add *-issimus, -issima, -issimum* to the STEM of the positive.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<u>cert-us</u> <i>certain</i>	<b>certior, certius</b> <i>more certain</i>	<b>certissimus, a, um</b> <i>most certain</i>
<u>grav-is</u> <i>heavy</i>	<b>gravior, gravior</b> <i>heavier</i>	<b>gravissimus, a, um</b> <i>heaviest</i>
<b>diligēns</b> stem : <b>diligent-</b> <i>careful</i>	<b>diligentior,</b> <b>diligentius</b> <i>more careful</i>	<b>diligentissimus, a,</b> <b>um</b> <i>most careful</i>
<b>audāx</b> stem : <b>audāc-</b> <i>daring</i>	<b>audācior, audācius</b> <i>more daring</i>	<b>audācissimus, a, um</b> <i>most daring</i>

93 The Latin comparative and superlative are weaker than the English (Nos. 854, 856) and are frequently translated by the adverbs 'rather' (comparative) and 'very' (superlative) with the positive of the adjective.

<b>certior, certius</b>	<i>rather certain</i>
<b>certissimus, a, um</b>	<i>very certain</i>

**Note:**

- 94 a. Adjectives in **-er** add **-rimus** to the **NOMINATIVE MASCULINE SINGULAR** to form the **SUPERLATIVE**.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
miser, misera, miserum <i>wretched</i>	miserrimus, a, um <i>most wretched</i>
ācer, ācris, ācre <i>sharp</i>	ācerrimus, a, um <i>sharpest</i>

- 95 **Note:** But the **COMPARATIVES** of these words follow the regular rule, No. 91. Thus:

stem: miser-	comp.: <b>miserior, miserius</b>
stem: ācr-	comp.: <b>ācrior, ācrius</b>

- 96 b. **Similis, like, dissimilis, unlike, facilis, easy, humilis, low, difficilis, difficult, gracilis, graceful**, add **-limus** to the stem to form the **SUPERLATIVE**.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
facilis, e stem: facil- <i>easy</i>	facillimus, a, um <i>easiest</i>

- 97 **Note:** But the comparatives of these words follow the regular rule, No. 91. Thus:

stem: facil-	comp.: <b>facilior, facilius</b>
--------------	----------------------------------

- 98 c. Adjectives ending in **-us** preceded by a vowel (except **qu** or **gu**) form their comparative and superlative with the adverbs **magis** and **maximē**.

Positive:	<i>doubtful</i>	dubius, a, um
Comparative:	<i>more doubtful</i>	magis dubius, a, um
Superlative:	<i>most doubtful</i>	maximē dubius, a, um

99 Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives.<sup>1</sup>

1. bonus, <i>good</i>	mel-ior, -ius, <i>better</i>	optimus, <i>best</i>
2. malus, <i>bad</i>	pē-jor, pē-jus, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, <i>worst</i>
3. magnus, <i>great</i>	mā-jor, mā-jus, <i>greater</i>	maximus, <i>greatest</i>
4. parvus, <i>small</i>	min-or, -us, <i>smaller</i>	minimus, <i>smallest</i>
5. multus, <i>much</i>	plūs (n.), <sup>2</sup> <i>more</i>	plūrimus, <i>most</i>
6. multī, <i>many</i>	plūr-ēs, -a, <sup>2</sup> <i>more</i>	plūrimī, <i>very many</i>
7. juvenis, <i>young</i>	jun-ior, ius, <i>younger</i>	[nātū minimus, <i>youngest</i> ]
8. senex, <i>aged</i>	sen-ior, ius, <i>elder</i>	[nātū maximus, <i>eldest</i> ]
9. novus, <i>new</i>	[recent-ior, -ius, <i>fresher</i> ]	novissimus, <i>last</i>
10. vetus (veter-), <i>old</i>	[vetust-ior, -ius, <i>older</i> ]	veterrimus, <i>oldest</i>
11. propinquus, <i>near</i>	prop-ior, -ius, <i>nearer</i>	proximus, <i>nearest, next</i>

<sup>1</sup>In this list only the masculine of the positive and superlative degrees are given. The feminine and neuter are formed regularly.

<sup>2</sup>*Plūs* is a noun in the singular: Nom. *plūs*, Gen. *plūris*, Dat. —, Acc. *plūs*, Abl. *plūre*; *plūs vinī*, 'more wine' (lit. 'more of wine'). In the plural it is an adjective: *plūrēs*, *plūrēs*, *plūra*, *plūrium*, etc.

**100** In the cases of the following comparatives and superlatives the corresponding positive adjective does not exist, or is rare:<sup>1</sup>

1. <i>dēterior, worse</i>	<i>dēterrīmus, worst</i>
2. <i>exterior, outer</i>	<i>extrēmus, outermost</i>
3. <i>īnferior, lower</i>	<i>īmus</i> } <i>lowest</i>
	<i>īfīmus</i> }
4. <i>interior, inner</i>	<i>īntīmus, inmost</i>
5. <i>posterior, later</i>	<i>postrēmus, last</i>
6. <i>prior, former</i>	<i>prīmus, first</i>
7. <i>superior, higher</i>	<i>suprēmus</i> } <i>highest</i>
	<i>summus</i> }
8. <i>ulterior, farther</i>	<i>ultīmus, farthest</i>

---

<sup>1</sup>In this list only the masculine is given; the feminine and neuter are formed regularly.

## Declension of Comparatives and Superlatives.

- 101 All COMPARATIVES are declined like *lĕx* and *flūmen*. The STEM is always the full MASCULINE SINGULAR NOMINATIVE, thus: stem: GRAVIOR-.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
	like	like	like
	<i>lĕx</i>	<i>lĕx</i>	<i>flūmen</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>gravior</i>	<i>gravius</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<u><i>graviōr-is</i></u>	<i>graviōr-is</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>graviōr-ī</i>	<i>graviōr-ī</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>graviōr-em</i>	<i>gravius</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<u><i>graviōr-e</i></u>	<u><i>graviōr-e</i></u>
P.	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>graviōr-ēs</i>	<u><i>graviōr-a</i></u>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<u><i>graviōr-um</i></u>	<u><i>graviōr-um</i></u>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>graviōr-ibus</i>	<i>graviōr-ibus</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>graviōr-ēs</i>	<u><i>graviōr-a</i></u>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>graviōr-ibus</i>	<i>graviōr-ibus</i>

- 102 All SUPERLATIVES are declined like *magnus*, *a*, *um*. Thus:

<i>certissim-us</i>	<i>certissim-a</i>	<i>certissim-um</i>
<i>certissim-ī</i>	<i>certissim-ae</i>	<i>certissim-ī</i>
<i>etc.</i>		



## ADVERBS

**103**     **Formation of Adverbs.** Although there are many other kinds of adverbs in Latin, a large number are formed from adjectives. The following GENERAL RULES may be given :

**104**     a. To form adverbs from adjectives of the first and second declensions, add **-ē** to the STEM :

Adjective	Stem	Adverb
<b>lātus, a, um</b> <i>wide</i>	<b>lāt-</b>	<b>lātē</b> <i>widely</i>
<b>līber, lībera, līberum</b> <i>free</i>	<b>līber-</b>	<b>līberē</b> <i>freely</i>

**105**     **Note:** But some adverbs have **-ō** instead of **-ē** :

Adjective	Stem	Adverb
<b>tūtus, a, um</b> <i>safe</i>	<b>tūt-</b>	<b>tūtō</b> <i>safely</i>

**106**     b. To form adverbs from adjectives of the third declension, add **-iter** to the STEM :

Adjective	Stem	Adverb
<b>gravis, e</b> <i>serious</i>	<b>grav-</b>	<b>graviter</b> <i>seriously</i>
<b>ācer, ācris, ācre</b> <i>sharp</i>	<b>ācr-</b>	<b>ācritēr</b> <i>sharply</i>

**107**     **Note:** But for adjectives in **-ns**, add **-er** to the STEM :

Adjective	Stem	Adverb
<b>dīligēns (gen. dīligentis)</b> <i>careful</i>	<b>dīligent-</b>	<b>dīligentēr</b> <i>carefully</i>

- 108 c. To form adverbs from many adjectives (especially of quantity and number), use the neuter singular accusative:

Adjective	Adverb
<b>multus, a, um</b>	<b>multum</b>
<i>much</i>	<i>much</i>
<b>facilis, e</b>	<b>facile</b>
<i>easy</i>	<i>easily</i>

### Comparison of Adverbs.

- 109 a. The COMPARATIVE of an adverb is the same as the NEUTER ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR of the comparative adjective.
- 110 b. The SUPERLATIVE of the adverb is formed by changing the -us of the superlative adjective to -ē.

	<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
Adj.	<b>lātus, a, um</b>	<b>lātior, latius</b>	<b>lātissimus, a, um</b>
	<i>wide</i>	<i>wider</i>	<i>widest</i>
Adv.	<b>lātē</b>	<b>lātius</b>	<b>lātissimē</b>
	<i>widely</i>	<i>more widely</i>	<i>most widely</i>
Adj.	<b>facilis, e</b>	<b>facilior, facilius</b>	<b>facillimus, a, um</b>
	<i>easy</i>	<i>easier</i>	<i>easiest</i>
Adv.	<b>facile</b>	<b>facilius</b>	<b>facillimē</b>
	<i>easily</i>	<i>more easily</i>	<i>most easily</i>

## 111 Irregular Comparison of Adverbs.

The following are irregular (either in the positive or in the comparative and superlative) :

<b>bene,</b> <sup>1</sup> <i>well</i>	<b>melius,</b> <i>better</i>	<b>optimē,</b> <i>best</i>
<b>male,</b> <sup>1</sup> <i>badly</i>	<b>pējus,</b> <i>worse</i>	<b>pessimē,</b> <i>worst</i>
<b>magnōpere,</b> <sup>2</sup> <i>greatly</i>	<b>magis,</b> <i>more</i>	<b>maximē,</b> <i>most</i>
<b>multum,</b> <i>much</i>	<b>plūs,</b> <i>more</i>	<b>plūrimum,</b> <i>most</i>
<b>parum,</b> <i>(too) little</i>	<b>minus,</b> <i>less</i>	<b>minimē,</b> <i>least</i>
<b>diū,</b> <i>long (of time)</i>	<b>diūtius,</b> <i>longer</i>	<b>diūtissimē,</b> <i>longest</i>
<b>nūper,</b> <i>lately</i>	.....	<b>nūperrimē,</b> <i>most recently</i>
.....	<b>potius,</b> <i>rather</i>	<b>potissimum,</b> <i>especially</i>
<b>prope,</b> <i>near</i>	<b>propius,</b> <i>nearer</i>	<b>proximē,</b> <i>next</i>
<b>saepe,</b> <i>often</i>	<b>saepius,</b> <i>oftener</i>	<b>saepissimē,</b> <i>oftenest</i>

<sup>1</sup>Note the short final *e* in these adverbs.

<sup>2</sup>*Magnōpere* = *magnō opere* (from *opus, operis*, n.).

## NUMERALS

112	Cardinals	113	Ordinals
	1 ūnus, a, um ( <i>one</i> )		prīmus, a, um ( <i>first</i> )
	2 duo, ae, o ( <i>two</i> )		secundus, a, um ( <i>second</i> ) <sup>1</sup>
	3 trēs, tria		tertius, a, um
	4 quattuor		quārtus, a, um
	5 quīnque		quīntus, a, um
	6 sex		sextus, a, um
	7 septem		septimus, a, um
	8 octō		octāvus, a, um
	9 novem		nōnus, a, um
	10 decem		decimus, a, um
	11 ūndecim		ūndecimus, a, um
	12 duodecim		duodecimus, a, um
	13 tredecim		tertius (a, um) decimus, a, um
	14 quattuordecim		quārtus (a, um) decimus, a, um
	15 quīndecim		quīntus (a, um) decimus, a, um
	16 sēdecim		sextus (a, um) decimus, a, um
	17 septendecim		septimus (a, um) decimus, a, um
	18 duodēvīgintī		duodēvīcēsīmus, a, um
	19 ūndēvīgintī		ūndēvīcēsīmus, a, um
	20 vīgintī		vīcēsīmus, a, um
	30 trīgintā		trīcēsīmus, a, um
	40 quadrāgintā		quadrāgēsīmus, a, um
	50 quīnquāgintā		quīnquāgēsīmus, a, um
	60 sexāgintā		sexāgēsīmus, a, um
	70 septuāgintā		septuāgēsīmus, a, um
	80 octōgintā		octōgēsīmus, a, um
	90 nōnāgintā		nōnāgēsīmus, a, um
	100 centum		centēsīmus, a, um
	200 ducentī, ae, a		ducentēsīmus, a, um

<sup>1</sup>See No. 826.

300	trecentī, ae, a	trecentēsīmus, a, um
400	quadrīgentī, ae, a	quadrīgentēsīmus, a, um
500	quīngentī, ae, a	quīngentēsīmus, a, um
600	sescentī, ae, a	sescentēsīmus, a, um
700	septīngentī, ae, a	septīngentēsīmus, a, um
800	octīngentī, ae, a	octīngentēsīmus, a, um
900	nōngentī, ae, a	nōngentēsīmus, a, um
1,000	mille	millēsīmus, a, um
2,000	duo mīlia	bis <sup>1</sup> millēsīmus, a, um
100,000	centum mīlia	centiēs <sup>1</sup> millēsīmus, a, um
1,000,000	deciēs <sup>1</sup> centēna (ōrum) mīlia	deciēs centiēs millēsīmus, a, um

## Declension of Numerals.

- 114 a. Ūnus, a, um, *one*, is declined like *magnus*, a, um except in the genitive and dative singular.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ūn-us	ūn-a	ūn-um
<i>Gen.</i>	<u>ūn-īus</u>	<u>ūn-īus</u>	<u>ūn-īus</u>
<i>Dat.</i>	<u>ūn-ī</u>	<u>ūn-ī</u>	<u>ūn-ī</u>
<i>Acc.</i>	ūn-um	ūn-am	ūn-um
<i>Abl.</i>	ūn-ō	ūn-ā	ūn-ō

- 115 b. Duo, duae, duo, *two*.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

<sup>1</sup>*Bis*, 'twice,' *deciēs*, 'ten times,' and *centiēs*, 'a hundred times,' are numerical adverbs (No. 118).

- 116 c. *Trēs, tria, three*, is declined like the plural of *gravis*, e.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	tr-ēs	tr-ēs	tr-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	tr-ium	tr-ium	tr-ium, etc.

- 117 d. *Mille, a thousand*, is an indeclinable ADJECTIVE:

*a thousand men, mille hominēs*

*by a thousand soldiers, ā mille mīlitibus.*

*Mīlia, thousands*, is a plural neuter NOUN (*mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus, mīlia, mīlibus*) and always takes the GENITIVE:

*with three thousand soldiers, cum tribus mīlibus mīlitum (with three thousands of soldiers).*

*two thousand men, duo mīlia hominum*

All other declinable numerals are declined like the plural of *magnus*, a, um, thus: *ducentī, ae, a, two hundred*. *Centum, one hundred*, is indeclinable.

- 118 **Note:** In CARDINAL numbers the DISTRIBUTIVE *centēnī* and the numerical ADVERBS begin at 1,000,000—*deciēs centēna mīlia* (literally, *ten times a hundred thousands*); in ORDINAL numbers the numerical ADVERBS begin at 2,000—*bis millēsīmus* (literally, *two times a thousand*). The DISTRIBUTIVE numerals and the numerical ADVERBS are:

	<i>Distributives</i>	<i>Adverbs</i>
1	singulī, ae, a ( <i>one by one</i> )	semel ( <i>once</i> )
2	binī, ae, a ( <i>two by two</i> )	bis ( <i>twice</i> )
3	ternī (trīnī)	ter
4	quaternī	quater
10	dēnī	deciēs
20	vīcēnī	vīciēs
21	vīcēnī singulī	vīciēs semel
100	centēnī	centiēs

## 119 Compound Numerals.

The numerals 21-29, 31-39, *etc.*, are formed by using other numerals together:

- 120 a. For all the numerals compounded with 8 and 9 up to and inclusive of 88 and 89, prefix *duodē-* and *ūndē-* to the next zero number:

<i>twenty-eight,</i>	<u>duodētrīgintā</u> ( <i>two-from-thirty</i> )
<i>twenty-eighth,</i>	<u>duodētrīcēsīmus</u> , a, um ( <i>two-from-thirtieth</i> )
<i>thirty-nine,</i>	<u>ūndēquadrāgintā</u> ( <i>one-from-forty</i> )
<i>thirty-ninth,</i>	<u>ūndēquadrāgēsīmus</u> , a, um ( <i>one-from-fortieth</i> )

- 121 b. For all other compound numerals between 20 and 100 put the small number first and use *et*, or put the large number first without *et*:

<i>twenty-one,</i>	ūnus et vīgintī vīgintī ūnus
<i>twenty-first,</i>	prīmus et vīcēsīmus vīcēsīmus prīmus
<i>ninety-four,</i>	quattuor et nōnāgintā nōnāgintā quattuor
<i>ninety-fourth,</i>	quārtus et nōnāgēsīmus nōnāgēsīmus quārtus

- 122 c. From 101 up put the largest number first without *et*:

<i>one hundred and one,</i>	centum ūnus
<i>one hundred and first,</i>	centēsīmus prīmus
<i>one hundred and fifty-two,</i>	centum quīnquāgintā duo

## PRONOUNS

### Personal Pronouns of the First and Second Persons.

123

#### First Person

S.	{	<i>Nom.</i>	<b>ego</b>	<i>I</i>	
		<i>Gen.</i>	<b>meī</b>	<i>of me</i>	<i>of myself</i>
		<i>Dat.</i>	<b>mihi</b>	<i>to me</i>	<i>to myself</i>
		<i>Acc.</i>	<b>mē</b>	<i>me</i>	<i>myself</i>
		<i>Abl.</i>	<b>mē<sup>1</sup></b>	<i>(by, etc.) me</i>	<i>(by, etc.) myself</i>
P.	{	<i>Nom.</i>	<b>nōs</b>	<i>we</i>	
		<i>Gen.</i>	<b>nostrī<sup>2</sup></b>	<i>of us</i>	<i>of ourselves</i>
			<b>nostrum<sup>3</sup></b>		
		<i>Dat.</i>	<b>nōbīs</b>	<i>to us</i>	<i>to ourselves</i>
		<i>Acc.</i>	<b>nōs</b>	<i>us</i>	<i>ourselves</i>
		<i>Abl.</i>	<b>nōbīs<sup>1</sup></b>	<i>(by, etc.) us</i>	<i>(by, etc.) ourselves</i>

124

#### Second Person

S.	{	<i>Nom.</i>	tū	you	
		<i>Gen.</i>	tuī	of you	of yourself
		<i>Dat.</i>	tibi	to you	to yourself
		<i>Acc.</i>	tē	you	yourself
		<i>Abl.</i>	tē <sup>1</sup>	(by, etc.) you	(by, etc.) yourself
P.	{	<i>Nom.</i>	vōs	you	
		<i>Gen.</i>	vestrī <sup>2</sup>	of you	of yourselves
			vestrum <sup>3</sup>		
		<i>Dat.</i>	vōbīs	to you	to yourselves
		<i>Acc.</i>	vōs	you	yourselves
		<i>Abl.</i>	vōbīs <sup>1</sup>	(by, etc.) you	(by, etc.) yourselves

<sup>1</sup>*Mēcum, tēcum, nōbīscum, vōbīscum* are used for *cum mē, etc.*

<sup>2</sup>*Nostrī* and *vestrī* are objective genitives only (see No. 684).

<sup>3</sup>*Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as partitive genitives (see No. 686).



# 125 Possessive Adjectives and Pronouns of the First and Second Persons.<sup>1</sup>

	as adjective	as pronoun
meus, a, um	<i>my</i>	<i>mine</i>
noster, nostra, nostrum	<i>our</i>	<i>ours</i>
tuus, a, um	<i>your (singular)</i>	<i>yours</i>
vester, vestra, vestrum	<i>your (plural)</i>	<i>yours</i>

## 126 Meus, a, um and tuus, a, um are declined like magnus, a, um.

Noster, nostra, nostrum (stem: *nostr-*) and vester, vestra, vestrum (stem: *vestr-*) are declined like integer, integra, integrum.

---

<sup>1</sup>The possessive adjective is used more frequently than the personal pronoun. Thus *pater noster* is preferred to *pater nostri*.

## Personal Pronouns of the Third Person.

## 127 a. Reflexive:

<i>Nom.</i>	.....	.....
<i>Gen.</i>	suī	of himself, herself, itself, themselves
<i>Dat.</i>	sibi	to himself, herself, itself, themselves
<i>Acc.</i>	sē (sēsē)	himself, herself, itself, themselves
<i>Abl.</i>	sē <sup>1</sup> (sēsē)	(by, etc.) himself, herself, itself, themselves

## 128 b. Non-reflexive:

		<i>Masc.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i>	is	he	ea	she	id it
	<i>Gen.</i>	ējus	of him his	ējus	of her her	ējus of it its
	<i>Dat.</i>	eī	to or for him	eī	to or for her	eī to or for it
	<i>Acc.</i>	eum	him	eam	her	id it
	<i>Abl.</i>	eō	(by, etc.) him	eā	(by, etc.) her	eō (by, etc.) it
P.	<i>Nom.</i>	eī <sup>2</sup>	they	eae	they	ea they (those things)
	<i>Gen.</i>	eōrum	of them their	eārum	of them their	eōrum of them their
	<i>Dat.</i>	eīs <sup>3</sup>	to or for them	eīs <sup>3</sup>	to or for them	eīs <sup>3</sup> to or for them
	<i>Acc.</i>	eōs	them	eās	them	ea them (those things)
	<i>Abl.</i>	eīs <sup>3</sup>	(by, etc.) them	eīs <sup>3</sup>	(by, etc.) them	eīs <sup>3</sup> (by, etc.) them

<sup>1</sup>*Sēcum* is used for *cum sē*.<sup>2</sup>The nominative masculine plural is also spelled *ī*.<sup>3</sup>The dative and ablative plural (all genders) are also spelled *īs*.

**Note:**

- 129 1. The meanings given for the masculine and feminine of **is**, **ea**, **id** hold only when the pronoun refers to **PERSONS**. Otherwise all forms are translated as in the neuter.
- Urbem cēpit. Postea eam incendit.  
*He took the city. Afterwards he burned it.*
- 130 2. The plural is declined by adding the plural endings of **magnus**, **a**, **um** to the **STEM**, **e-**.

**Possessive Adjective and Pronoun of the Third Person.**

- 131 a. **Reflexive:** **suus**, **a**, **um**, *his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)*. **Suus** is declined like **magnus**, **a**, **um**.
- 132 b. **Non-reflexive:** The genitive of **is**, **ea**, **id** is used.  
*ējus, of him, of her, of it = his, her, its.*  
*eōrum, eārum, of them = their.*

## Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns.

133

## THIS

		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc
	<i>Gen.</i>	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus
	<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic
	<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc
	<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc

## THESE

		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
P.	<i>Nom.</i>	hī	hae	haec
	<i>Gen.</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
	<i>Dat.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs
	<i>Acc.</i>	hōs	hās	haec
	<i>Abl.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs

134

THAT  
(Emphatic)

		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud
	<i>Gen.</i>	illīus	illīus	illīus
	<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī
	<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud
	<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō

## THOSE

		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
P.	<i>Nom.</i>	illī	illae	illa
	<i>Gen.</i>	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
	<i>Dat.</i>	illis	illis	illis
	<i>Acc.</i>	illōs	illās	illa
	<i>Abl.</i>	illis	illis	illis

- 135 **Is, ea, id<sup>1</sup>** is also a demonstrative pronoun meaning *that* (pl. *those*). It is less emphatic than *ille, illa, illud*.
- 136 **Iste, ista, istud<sup>2</sup>**, *that, that of yours*, is declined like *ille, illa, illud* (No. 134).

137

SAME

		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>īdem</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>	<i>ējusdem</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>īdem</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>
P.	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>eīdem<sup>3</sup></i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eīsdem<sup>3</sup></i>	<i>eīsdem<sup>3</sup></i>	<i>eīsdem<sup>3</sup></i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eīsdem<sup>3</sup></i>	<i>eīsdem<sup>3</sup></i>	<i>eīsdem<sup>3</sup></i>

<sup>1</sup>This is the same word that is used for the personal pronoun of the third person. For its declension see No. 128.

<sup>2</sup>*Eīdem* is also spelled *īdem* and *īdem*.

<sup>3</sup>*Eīsdem* is also spelled *īsdem* and *īsdem*.

## 138 Intensive Adjective and Pronoun.

		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
	<i>Gen.</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
	<i>Dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
	<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
	<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
P.	<i>Nom.</i>	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
	<i>Gen.</i>	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
	<i>Dat.</i>	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
	<i>Acc.</i>	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
	<i>Abl.</i>	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

## 139 The Relative Pronoun and Adjective.

WHO; WHICH; THAT; WHAT

		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
S.	<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod
	<i>Gen.</i>	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus
	<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui
	<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod
	<i>Abl.</i>	quō <sup>1</sup>	quā <sup>1</sup>	quō <sup>1</sup>
P.	<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quae
	<i>Gen.</i>	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
	<i>Dat.</i>	quibus	quibus	quibus
	<i>Acc.</i>	quōs	quās	quae
	<i>Abl.</i>	quibus <sup>1</sup>	quibus <sup>1</sup>	quibus <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>*Quōcum* (or *quīcum*), *quācum*, *quibuscum* are used instead of *cum quō*, *cum quā*, *cum quibus*.

140 The Interrogative Pronoun.

WHO? WHAT?

[For Persons]				
S.	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quis</i>	<i>quis</i>	<i>Neut.</i> <i>quid</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>cūjus</i>	<i>cūjus</i>	<i>cūjus</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quem</i>	<i>quid</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>quō<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>quō<sup>1</sup></i>
P.		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
	<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quibus<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>quibus<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>quibus<sup>1</sup></i>

141 The Interrogative Adjective. *Quī, quae, quod, which, what*, is declined like the relative pronoun (No. 139).<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup>*Quōcum* (or *quīcum*) and *quibuscum* are used instead of *cum quō, cum quibus*.

<sup>2</sup>In the nominative masculine singular *quis* is generally used (especially with words denoting a person) as an adjective for 'which,' 'what' (*Quis vir vocat? i. e.,* Give me the name of the man who is calling), and *quī* is used for the adjective 'what sort of,' 'what kind of' (*Quī homō ōrat?*).

## VERBS

- 142    **Verbs** have voice, mood, tense, number, and person.
- 143    **Voice.** There are two voices: active and passive.
- 144    a. The active represents the subject as acting or being.  
          *Lēgātum laudō.*  
          *I praise the envoy.*  
          *Valeō.*  
          *I am well.*
- 145    b. The passive represents the subject as acted upon.  
          *Laudor.*  
          *I am praised.*
- 146    **Mood.**<sup>1</sup> There are three moods: indicative, subjunctive, imperative.
- 147    **Tense.**<sup>1</sup> There are six tenses: present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, future perfect.
- 148    **Number.** There are two numbers: singular and plural.
- 149    **Person.** There are three persons:  
          First (the one speaking—*I, we*).  
          Second (the one spoken to—*you*).  
          Third (the one spoken of—*he, she, it, they*).
- 150    **Conjugation** consists in adding the proper endings to the proper stem to show the different voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

---

<sup>1</sup>The meanings and uses of the moods and tenses must be learned from syntax.



- 151 **The Four Conjugations.** There are four conjugations in Latin. They can be distinguished by the endings of the present infinitive active.

1	2	3	4
-āre	-ēre	-ere	-īre
laud-āre	mon-ēre	mitt-ere	aud-īre

- 152 **Principal Parts.** There are four parts of the verb called principal parts because all the others are formed on them or on their stems. These parts are:

	1	2	3	4
Pres. ind. act.	laud-ō	mon-eō	mitt-ō	aud-iō
Pres. infin. act.	laud-āre	mon-ēre	mitt-ere	aud-īre
Perf. ind. act.	laudāv-ī	monu-ī	mīs-ī	audīv-ī
Perf. part. pass.	laudāt-us <sup>1</sup>	monit-us <sup>1</sup>	miss-us <sup>1</sup>	audīt-us <sup>1</sup>

- 153 The present stem is found by dropping the ending of the present infinitive active.

laudāre	laud-	} On this stem are formed: all present, imperfect, and future tenses; <sup>2</sup> the gerund and the gerundive.
monēre	mon-	
mittere	mitt-	
audire	aud-	

- 154 The perfect stem is found by dropping the ending of the perfect indicative.

laudāvī	laudāv-	} On this stem are formed: all perfect, pluperfect, future perfect tenses active.
monuī	monu-	
mīsī	mīs-	
audīvī	audīv-	

<sup>1</sup>The perfect participle passive is given in the masculine in all verbs that use it in all genders; otherwise it is given in the neuter (*e. g.*, in intransitive verbs). Some verbs have no perfect participle passive; the future participle active is then given as the fourth principal part (*e. g.*, *haerēō*, *haerēre*, *haesi*, *haesurus*, 2, *intr.*, 'cling').

<sup>2</sup>Except the future participle active and the future infinitive passive (see Nos. 156 and 158).

- 155** The perfect participle passive is used with forms of the verb *esse* to form the perfect, pluperfect, future perfect tenses passive.

laudātus	laudātus sum, etc.
monitus	monitus sum, etc.
missus	missus sum, etc.
audītus	audītus sum, etc.

**Other Uses of the Perfect Participle Passive:**

- 156** 1. The future participle active is formed by changing the -us of the perfect participle passive to -ūrus.
- 157** 2. The supines are formed by changing the -us of the perfect participle passive to -um or to -ū.
- 158** 3. The future infinitive passive is formed on this stem by using the supine in -um with *īrī* as a separate word.

<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>Fut. Part.</i>			<i>Fut. Inf.</i>
<i>Pass.</i>	<i>Act.</i>	<i>Supines</i>		<i>Pass.</i>
laudātus	laudāt-ūrus	laudāt-um	laudāt-ū	laudātum īrī
monitus	monit-ūrus	monit-um	monit-ū	monitum īrī
missus	miss-ūrus	miss-um	miss-ū	missum īrī
audītus	audīt-ūrus	audīt-um	audīt-ū	audītum īrī

- 159** How to Conjugate.

1. The principal parts must be learned from the vocabularies.<sup>1</sup>
2. The present infinitive shows to which conjugation the verb belongs.
3. Find the required stems according to the rules given above.
4. Add the endings of the proper conjugation to the stems.

<sup>1</sup>But many verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations form their principal parts just like *laudō*, *moneō*, *audiō*. These will be written in the vocabularies: *pācō*, *ī*, *tr.*, 'pacify,' etc. The principal parts of verbs of the third conjugation, however, will always be written out.

## THE FOUR REGULAR CONJUGATIONS

### Model Verbs

**Laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātus, 1, tr., praise**

**Moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus, 2, tr., advise**

**Mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, 3, tr., send**

**Audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus, 4, tr., hear**

### ACTIVE VOICE

#### 160 Personal Signs of the Active.

		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
First	(I)	-ō or -m	(we) -mus
Second	(you)	-s	(you) -tis
Third	(he, she, it)	-t	(they) -nt

#### 161 Exceptions: First and second person singular perfect indicative: laudāv-ī and laudāv-istī.

# ACTIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## Present Tense

*(Present Stem)*

162	S.	1. laud-ō	<i>I praise, I am praising, I do praise</i>
		2. laud-ās	<i>you praise, you are praising, you do praise</i>
		3. laud-at	<i>he, she, it praises; he, she, it is praising; he, she, it does praise</i>
	P.	1. laud-āmus	<i>we praise, we are praising, we do praise</i>
		2. laud-ātis	<i>you praise, you are praising, you do praise</i>
		3. laud-ant	<i>they praise, they are praising, they do praise</i>

## Imperfect Tense

*(Present Stem)*

163	S.	1. laud-ābam	<i>I was praising</i>
		2. laud-ābās	<i>you were praising</i>
		3. laud-ābat	<i>he, she, it was praising</i>
	P.	1. laud-ābāmus	<i>we were praising</i>
		2. laud-ābātis	<i>you were praising</i>
		3. laud-ābant	<i>they were praising</i>

## Future Tense

*(Present Stem)*

164	S.	1. laud-ābō	<i>I shall praise</i>	<i>(I shall be praising)</i>
		2. laud-ābis	<i>you will praise</i>	<i>(you will be praising)</i>
		3. laud-ābit	<i>he, she, it will praise</i>	<i>(he, she, it will be praising)</i>
	P.	1. laud-ābimus	<i>we shall praise</i>	<i>(we shall be praising)</i>
		2. laud-ābitis	<i>you will praise</i>	<i>(you will be praising)</i>
		3. laud-ābunt	<i>they will praise</i>	<i>(they will be praising)</i>

ACTIVE VOICE  
INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense  
(Present Stem)

<b>165</b> <i>I advise,</i> mon-eō mon-ēs mon-et  mon-ēmus mon-ētis mon-ent	<b>166</b> <i>I send,</i> mitt-ō mitt-is mitt-it  mitt-imus mitt-itis mitt-unt	<b>167</b> <i>I hear.</i> aud-iō aud-īs aud-it  aud-īmus aud-ītis aud-iunt
--	---	---

Imperfect Tense  
(Present Stem)

<b>168</b> <i>I was advising,</i> mon-ēbam mon-ēbās mon-ēbat  mon-ēbāmus mon-ēbātis mon-ēbant	<b>169</b> <i>sending,</i> mitt-ēbam mitt-ēbās mitt-ēbat  mitt-ēbāmus mitt-ēbātis mitt-ēbant	<b>170</b> <i>hearing.</i> aud-iēbam aud-iēbās aud-iēbat  aud-iēbāmus aud-iēbātis aud-iēbant
--	---	---

Future Tense  
(Present Stem)

<b>171</b> <i>I shall advise,</i> mon-ēbō mon-ēbis mon-ēbit  mon-ēbimus mon-ēbitis mon-ēbunt	<b>172</b> <i>send,</i> mitt-am mitt-ēs mitt-et  mitt-ēmus mitt-ētis mitt-ent	<b>173</b> <i>hear.</i> aud-iam aud-iēs aud-iet  aud-iēmus aud-iētis aud-ient
---	--	--

## ACTIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## Perfect Tense

*(Perfect Stem)*

174	S.	1. laudāv-ī	<i>I praised</i>	<i>(I have praised)</i>
		2. laudāv-istī	<i>you praised</i>	<i>(you have praised)</i>
		3. laudāv-it	<i>he, she, it praised</i>	<i>(he, she, it has praised)</i>
	P.	1. laudāv-imus	<i>we praised</i>	<i>(we have praised)</i>
		2. laudāv-istis	<i>you praised</i>	<i>(you have praised)</i>
		3. laudāv-ērunt	<i>they praised</i>	<i>(they have praised)</i>

## Pluperfect Tense

*(Perfect Stem and the Imperfect of sum)*

175	S.	1. laudāv-eram	<i>I had praised</i>
		2. laudāv-erās	<i>you had praised</i>
		3. laudāv-erat	<i>he, she, it had praised</i>
	P.	1. laudāv-erāmus	<i>we had praised</i>
		2. laudāv-erātis	<i>you had praised</i>
		3. laudāv-erant	<i>they had praised</i>

## Future Perfect Tense

*(Perfect Stem)*

176	S.	1. laudāv-erō	<i>I shall have praised</i>
		2. laudāv-eris	<i>you will have praised</i>
		3. laudāv-erit	<i>he, she, it will have praised</i>
	P.	1. laudāv-erimus	<i>we shall have praised</i>
		2. laudāv-eritis	<i>you will have praised</i>
		3. laudāv-erint	<i>they will have praised</i>

ACTIVE VOICE  
INDICATIVE MOOD

Perfect Tense  
(Perfect Stem)

177	<i>I (have) advised,</i> monu-ī monu-istī monu-it  monu-imus monu-istis monu-ērunt	178	<i>sent,</i> mīs-ī mīs-istī mīs-it  mīs-imus mīs-istis mīs-ērunt	179	<i>heard.</i> audīv-ī audīv-istī audīv-it  audīv-imus audīv-istis audīv-ērunt
-----	---	-----	---	-----	--

Pluperfect Tense  
(Perfect Stem and the Imperfect of sum)

180	<i>I had advised,</i> monu-eram monu-erās monu-erat  monu-erāmus monu-erātis monu-erant	181	<i>sent,</i> mīs-eram mīs-erās mīs-erat  mīs-erāmus mīs-erātis mīs-erant	182	<i>heard.</i> audīv-eram audīv-erās audīv-erat  audīv-erāmus audīv-erātis audīv-erant
-----	--	-----	---	-----	--

Future Perfect Tense  
(Perfect Stem)

183	<i>I shall have advised,</i> monu-erō monu-eris monu-erit  monu-erimus monu-eritis monu-erint	184	<i>sent,</i> mīs-erō mīs-eris mīs-erit  mīs-erimus mīs-eritis mīs-erint	185	<i>heard.</i> audīv-erō audīv-eris audīv-erit  audīv-erimus audīv-eritis audīv-erint
-----	--	-----	--	-----	---

## ACTIVE VOICE

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

## Present Tense

*(Present Stem)*

## In Purpose Clauses

## In Wishes

186

S.	1. laud-em	<i>(that) I may praise</i>	<i>may I praise</i>
	2. laud-ēs	<i>(that) you may praise</i>	<i>may you praise</i>
	3. laud-et	<i>(that) he, she, it may praise</i>	<i>may he, she, it praise</i>
P.	1. laud-ēmus	<i>(that) we may praise</i>	<i>may we praise,</i>
	2. laud-ētis	<i>(that) you may praise</i>	<i>may you praise</i>
	3. laud-ent	<i>(that) they may praise</i>	<i>may they praise</i>

## Imperfect Tense

*(Present Stem)*

187

S.	1. laud-ārem	<i>(that) I might praise</i>
	2. laud-ārēs	<i>(that) you might praise</i>
	3. laud-āret	<i>(that) he, she, it might praise</i>
P.	1. laud-ārēmus	<i>(that) we might praise</i>
	2. laud-ārētis	<i>(that) you might praise</i>
	3. laud-ārent	<i>(that) they might praise</i>

## Examples of the Subjunctive

188 The meanings of the subjunctive must be learned from syntax. A few examples are given here.

189 1. The present subjunctive is used to express wishes, as:

May you praise God.

Deum laudēs.

190 2. The first person plural and the third person, singular and plural, of the present subjunctive are used to translate the English *let*, as:

Let us praise God.

Deum laudēmus.



ACTIVE VOICE

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present Tense  
(Present Stem)

194	<i>(that) I may advise,</i>		195	<i>send,</i>		196	<i>hear.</i>	
	mon-eam			mitt-am			aud-iam	
	mon-eās			mitt-ās			aud-iās	
	mon-eat			mitt-at			aud-iat	
	mon-eāmus			mitt-āmus			aud-iāmus	
	mon-eātis			mitt-ātis			aud-iātis	
	mon-eant			mitt-ant			aud-iant	

Imperfect Tense  
(Present Stem)

197	<i>(that) I might advise,</i>		198	<i>send,</i>		199	<i>hear.</i>	
	mon-ērem			mitt-erem			aud-īrem	
	mon-ērēs			mitt-erēs			aud-īrēs	
	mon-ēret			mitt-eret			aud-īret	
	mon-ērēmus			mitt-erēmus			aud-īrēmus	
	mon-ērētis			mitt-erētis			aud-īrētis	
	mon-ērent			mitt-erent			aud-īrent	

- 191 3. The present and imperfect subjunctive are used in subordinate purpose clauses :

*Christ came*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{that He might} \\ \text{to} \end{array} \right\}$  praise *God.*

Christus vēnit ut Deum laudāret.

- 192 4. The subjunctive is used in indirect questions.  
*He asked whether I was praising God.*  
Rogāvit num Deum laudārem.

- 193 **Note:** The subjunctive in subordinate clauses is often translated by the ENGLISH INDICATIVE.

ACTIVE VOICE  
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Perfect Tense

(*Perfect Active Stem*)

In Indirect Questions

200

S.	1.	laudāv-erim	(whether) I praised
	2.	laudāv-erīs	(whether) you praised
	3.	laudāv-erit	(whether) he, she, it praised
P.	1.	laudāv-erīmus	(whether) we praised
	2.	laudāv-erītis	(whether) you praised
	3.	laudāv-erint	(whether) they praised

Pluperfect Tense

(*Perfect Active Stem*)

201

S.	1.	laudāv-issem	(whether) I had praised
	2.	laudāv-issēs	(whether) you had praised
	3.	laudāv-isset	(whether) he, she, it had praised
P.	1.	laudāv-issēmus	(whether) we had praised
	2.	laudāv-issētis	(whether) you had praised
	3.	laudāv-issent	(whether) they had praised

ACTIVE VOICE  
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Perfect Tense  
(*Perfect Active Stem*)

202	(whether) I advised, monu-erim monu-erīs monu-erit	203	sent, mīs-erim mīs-erīs mīs-erit	204	heard. audīv-erim audīv-erīs audīv-erit
	monu-erīmus monu-erītis monu-erint		mīs-erīmus mīs-erītis mīs-erint		audīv-erīmus audīv-erītis audīv-erint

Pluperfect Tense  
(*Perfect Active Stem*)

205	(whether) I had advised, monu-issem monu-issēs monu-isset	206	sent, mīs-issem mīs-issēs mīs-isset	207	heard. audīv-issem audīv-issēs audīv-isset
	monu-issēmūs monu-issētis monu-issent		mīs-issēmūs mīs-issētis mīs-issent		audīv-issēmūs audīv-issētis audīv-issent

## ACTIVE VOICE

## IMPERATIVE MOOD

*(Present Stem)*

- 208 S. laud-ā (you) *praise!*  
 P. laud-āte (you) *praise!*

## INFINITIVE

Present Tense

*(Present Stem)*

Perfect Tense

*(Perfect Active Stem)*

- 209 laudāre to praise      210 laudāv-isse to have praised

Future Tense

*(Stem of perfect participle passive, e. g., laudātus, stem: laudāt-)*

- 211 laudāt-ūrus, a, um esse to be about to praise

## GERUND (VERBAL NOUN)

*(Present Stem)*

- 212 Gen. laud-andī of praising  
 Dat. laud-andō to or for praising  
 Acc. laud-andum praising  
 Abl. laud-andō by praising

## SUPINE

*(Stem of perfect participle passive, e. g., laudātus, stem: laudāt-)*

- 213 laudāt-um to praise  
 laudāt-ū in praising, to praise

## PARTICIPLE (VERBAL ADJECTIVE)

Present Tense

*(Present Stem)*

- 214 laudāns (laudant-is)<sup>1</sup> praising

Future Tense

*(Stem of perfect participle passive, e. g., laudātus, stem: laudāt-)*

- 215 laudāt-ūrus, a, um<sup>2</sup> { being about to praise  
   about to praise  
   on the point of praising

<sup>1</sup>For the declension of the present participle see No. 307.

<sup>2</sup>The future participle is declined like *magnus, a, um*.

## ACTIVE VOICE

IMPERATIVE MOOD<sup>1</sup>

(Present Stem)

216	S. mon-ē	217	mitt-e	218	aud-ī
	P. mon-ēte		mitt-ite		aud-īte

## INFINITIVE

Present Tense

(Present Stem)

219	mon-ēre	220	mitt-ere	221	aud-īre
-----	---------	-----	----------	-----	---------

Perfect Tense

(Perfect Active Stem)

222	monu-isse	223	mīs-isse	224	audīv-isse
-----	-----------	-----	----------	-----	------------

Future Tense

(Stem of perfect participle passive, e. g., monitus, stem: monit-)

225	monit-ūrus, a, um esse	226	miss-ūrus, a, um esse	227	audīt-ūrus, a, um esse
-----	---------------------------	-----	--------------------------	-----	---------------------------

## GERUND (VERBAL NOUN)

(Present Stem)

228	Gen. mon-endī	229	mitt-endī	230	aud-iendī
	Dat. mon-endō		mitt-endō		aud-iendō
	Acc. mon-endum		mitt-endum		aud-iendum
	Abl. mon-endō		mitt-endō		aud-iendō

## SUPINE

(Stem of perfect participle passive, e. g., monitus, stem: monit-)

231	monit-um	232	miss-um	233	audīt-um
	monit-ū		miss-ū		audīt-ū

<sup>1</sup>In the future the imperative occurs in both the second and third persons: singular, *laudātō* (*monētō*, *mittitō*, *audītō*), 'you shall praise (advise, send, hear)'; *laudātō* (*monētō*, *mittitō*, *audītō*), 'he shall praise (advise, send, hear)'; plural, *laudātōte* (*monētōte*, *mittitōte*, *audītōte*), 'you shall praise (advise, send, hear)'; *laudantō* (*monentō*, *mittuntō*, *auduntō*), 'they shall praise (advise, send, hear).'

## PARTICIPLE (VERBAL ADJECTIVE)

## Present Tense

*(Present Stem)*

234	mon-ēns (monent-is) <sup>1</sup>	235	mitt-ēns (mittent-is) <sup>1</sup>	236	aud-iēns (audient-is) <sup>1</sup>
-----	-------------------------------------	-----	---------------------------------------	-----	---------------------------------------

## Future Tense

*(Stem of perfect participle passive, e. g., monitus, stem: monit-)*

237	monit-ūrus, a, um <sup>2</sup>	238	miss-ūrus, a, um <sup>2</sup>	239	audīt-ūrus, a, um <sup>2</sup>
-----	-----------------------------------	-----	----------------------------------	-----	-----------------------------------

<sup>1</sup>For the declension of the present participle see No. 307.<sup>2</sup>The future participle is declined like *magnus, a, um*.

## PASSIVE VOICE

To form the PASSIVE of the four regular conjugations:

- 240** a. In the finite tenses formed on the PRESENT STEM change the final personal signs:

### *Singular*

1. -ō	to	-or
-m	to	-r
2. -s	to	-ris
3. -t	to	-tur

### *Plural*

1. -mus	to	-mur
2. -tis	to	-mini
3. -nt	to	-ntur

- 241** **Note:** The second person singular of the future indicative in the first and second conjugations changes

-is                      to                      -eris

laudābis	laudāberis
monēbis	monēberis

- 242** b. In the perfect tenses use the perfect participle passive with the forms of the verb *esse* shown in Nos. 255-257, 275-276. Thus:

laudātus sum	<i>I have been praised</i>
laudātus erās	<i>you had been praised</i>

PASSIVE VOICE  
INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense

(*Present Stem*)

243	S.	1. laud-or	<i>I am being praised</i>	<i>(I am praised)</i>
		2. laud-āris	<i>you are being praised</i>	<i>(you are praised)</i>
		3. laud-ātur	<i>he, she, it is being praised</i>	<i>(he, she, it is praised)</i>
	P.	1. laud-āmur	<i>we are being praised</i>	<i>(we are praised)</i>
		2. laud-āminī	<i>you are being praised</i>	<i>(you are praised)</i>
		3. laud-antur	<i>they are being praised</i>	<i>(they are praised)</i>

Imperfect Tense

(*Present Stem*)

244	S.	1. laud-ābar	<i>I was being praised</i>	
		2. laud-ābāris	<i>you were being praised</i>	
		3. laud-ābātur	<i>he, she, it was being praised</i>	
	P.	1. laud-ābāmur	<i>we were being praised</i>	
		2. laud-ābāminī	<i>you were being praised</i>	
		3. laud-ābantur	<i>they were being praised</i>	

Future Tense

(*Present Stem*)

245	S.	1. laud-ābor	<i>I shall be praised</i>	
		2. laud-āberis	<i>you will be praised</i>	
		3. laud-ābitur	<i>he, she, it will be praised</i>	
	P.	1. laud-ābimur	<i>we shall be praised</i>	
		2. laud-ābimini	<i>you will be praised</i>	
		3. laud-ābuntur	<i>they will be praised</i>	



PASSIVE VOICE  
INDICATIVE MOOD

Present Tense  
(Present Stem)

246	<i>I am advised,</i> mon-eor mon-ēris mon-ētur	247	<i>sent,</i> mitt-or mitt-eris mitt-itur  mitt-imur mitt-iminī mitt-untur	248	<i>heard.</i> aud-ior aud-īris aud-ītur  aud-īmur aud-īminī aud-iuntur
-----	---	-----	--	-----	---

Imperfect Tense  
(Present Stem)

249	<i>I was being advised,</i> mon-ēbar mon-ēbāris mon-ēbātur	250	<i>sent,</i> mitt-ēbar mitt-ēbāris mitt-ēbātur  mitt-ēbāmur mitt-ēbāminī mitt-ēbantur	251	<i>heard.</i> aud-iēbar aud-iēbāris aud-iēbātur  aud-iēbāmur aud-iēbāminī aud-iēbantur
-----	---	-----	--	-----	---

Future Tense  
(Present Stem)

252	<i>I shall be advised,</i> mon-ēbor mon-ēberis mon-ēbitur	253	<i>sent,</i> mitt-ar mitt-ēris mitt-ētur  mitt-ēmur mitt-ēminī mitt-entur	254	<i>heard.</i> aud-iar aud-iēris aud-iētur  aud-iēmur aud-iēminī aud-ientur
-----	--	-----	--	-----	---

## PASSIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## Perfect Tense

*(Perfect participle passive with sum, etc.)*

255	S. laudātus (a, um)	{	sum	<i>I was praised</i>	<i>(I have been praised)</i>
			es	<i>you were praised</i>	<i>(you have been praised)</i>
			est	<i>he, she, it was praised</i>	<i>(he, she, it has been praised)</i>
	P. laudātī (ae, a)	{	sumus	<i>we were praised</i>	<i>(we have been praised)</i>
			estis	<i>you were praised</i>	<i>(you have been praised)</i>
			sunt	<i>they were praised</i>	<i>(they have been praised)</i>

## Pluperfect Tense

*(Perfect participle passive with eram, etc.)*

256	S. laudātus (a, um)	{	eram	<i>I had been praised</i>	
			erās	<i>you had been praised</i>	
			erat	<i>he, she, it had been praised</i>	
	P. laudātī (ae, a)	{	erāmus	<i>we had been praised</i>	
			erātis	<i>you had been praised</i>	
			erant	<i>they had been praised</i>	

## Future Perfect Tense

*(Perfect participle passive with erō, etc.)*

257	S. laudātus (a, um)	{	erō	<i>I shall have been praised</i>	
			eris	<i>you will have been praised</i>	
			erit	<i>he, she, it will have been praised</i>	
	P. laudātī (ae, a)	{	erimus	<i>we shall have been praised</i>	
			eritis	<i>you will have been praised</i>	
			erunt	<i>they will have been praised</i>	

PASSIVE VOICE  
INDICATIVE MOOD

Perfect Tense

(*Perfect participle passive with sum, etc.*)

*I was (have been) advised, sent, heard.*

258

259

260

S. monitus, a, um

missus, a, um

auditus, a, um

sum
es
est

P. monitū, ae, a

missī, ae, a

audītū, ae, a

sumus
estis
sunt

Pluperfect Tense

(*Perfect participle passive with eram, etc.*)

*I had been advised, sent, heard.*

261

262

263

S. monitus, a, um

missus, a, um

auditus, a, um

eram
erās
erat

P. monitū, ae, a

missī, ae, a

audītū, ae, a

erāmus
erātis
erant

Future Perfect Tense

(*Perfect participle passive with erō, etc.*)

*I shall have been advised, sent, heard.*

264

265

266

S. monitus, a, um

missus, a, um

auditus, a, um

erō
eris
erit

P. monitū, ae, a

missī, ae, a

audītū, ae, a

erimus
eritis
erunt

PASSIVE VOICE  
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present Tense

(*Present Stem*)

267

In Purpose Clauses<sup>1</sup>

In Wishes

S.	1. laud-er	(that) I may be praised	may I be praised
	2. laud-ēris	(that) you may be praised	may you be praised
	3. laud-ētur	(that) he, she, it may be praised	may he, she, it be praised
P.	1. laud-ēmur	(that) we may be praised	may we be praised
	2. laud-ēmini	(that) you may be praised	may you be praised
	3. laud-entur	(that) they may be praised	may they be praised

Imperfect Tense

(*Present Stem*)

268

In Purpose Clauses<sup>1</sup>

S.	1. laud-ārer	(that) I might be praised
	2. laud-ārēris	(that) you might be praised
	3. laud-ārētur	(that) he, she, it might be praised
P.	1. laud-ārēmur	(that) we might be praised
	2. laud-ārēmini	(that) you might be praised
	3. laud-ārentur	(that) they might be praised

<sup>1</sup>Example meanings of the subjunctive are given here. For other meanings see Nos. 189-193. Further treatment of the subjunctive will be found in Part 2, Syntax.

PASSIVE VOICE  
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Present Tense  
(Present Stem)

269	<i>(that) I may be advised,</i>	270	<i>sent,</i>	271	<i>heard.</i>
	mon-ear		mitt-ar		aud-iar
	mon-eāris		mitt-āris		aud-iāris
	mon-eātur		mitt-ātur		aud-iātur
	mon-eāmur		mitt-āmur		aud-iāmur
	mon-eāminī		mitt-āminī		aud-iāminī
	mon-eantur		mitt-antur		aud-iantur

Imperfect Tense  
(Present Stem)

272	<i>(that) I might be advised,</i>	273	<i>sent,</i>	274	<i>heard.</i>
	mon-ērer		mitt-erer		aud-īrer
	mon-ērēris		mitt-erēris		aud-īrēris
	mon-ērētur		mitt-erētur		aud-īrētur
	mon-ērēmur		mitt-erēmur		aud-īrēmur
	mon-ērēminī		mitt-erēminī		aud-īrēminī
	mon-ērentur		mitt-erentur		aud-īrentur

PASSIVE VOICE  
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Perfect Tense

(*Perfect participle passive with sim, etc.*)

		In Indirect Questions		
275	S. laudātus, a, um	sim	(whether) I was praised	(I have been praised)
		sīs	(whether) you were praised	(you have been praised)
		sit	(whether) he, she, it was praised	(he, she, it has been praised)
	P. laudātī, ae, a	sīmus	(whether) we were praised	(we have been praised)
		sītis	(whether) you were praised	(you have been praised)
		sint	(whether) they were praised	(they have been praised)

Pluperfect Tense

(*Perfect participle passive with essem, etc.*)

		In Indirect Questions		
276	S. laudātus, a, um	essem	(whether) I had been praised	
		essēs	(whether) you had been praised	
		esset	(whether) he, she, it had been praised	
	P. laudātī, ae, a	essēmus	(whether) we had been praised	
		essētis	(whether) you had been praised	
		essent	(whether) they had been praised	

PASSIVE VOICE  
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

Perfect Tense

(*Perfect participle passive with sim, etc.*)

277	(whether) I was advised, sent,	278	heard.	279		
	S. monitus, a, um	missus, a, um	auditus, a, um	{ sim sīs sit		
	P. monitī, ae, a	missī, ae, a	audītī, ae, a	{ sīmus sītis sint		

Pluperfect Tense

(*Perfect participle passive with essem, etc.*)

280	(whether) I had been advised, sent,	281	heard.	282		
	S. monitus, a, um	missus, a, um	auditus, a, um	{ essem essēs esset		
	P. monitī, ae, a	missī, ae, a	audītī, ae, a	{ essēmus essētis essent		

## PASSIVE VOICE

IMPERATIVE MOOD<sup>1</sup>*(Present Stem)*

- 283 S. laud-āre                      *be (you) praised!*  
 P. laud-āminī                  *be (you) praised!*

## INFINITIVE

Present Tense

*(Present Stem)*

- 284 laud-ārī                      *to be praised*

Perfect Tense

*(Perfect participle passive with esse)*

- 285 laudātus, a, um esse      *to have been praised*

Future Tense

*(Supine with īrī)*

- 286 laudāt-um īrī              *to be about to be praised*

## PARTICIPLE (VERBAL ADJECTIVE)

Perfect Tense

- 287 laudāt-us, a, um<sup>2</sup>      *having been praised*

## GERUNDIVE

*(Present Stem)*

- 288 laud-andus, a, um<sup>2</sup>      *(ought) to be praised*

<sup>1</sup>In the future the imperative occurs in both the second and third persons singular and the third person plural: singular, *laudātor*, 'you shall be praised,' *laudātor*, 'he shall be praised'; plural, *laudantor*, 'they shall be praised.' The second person plural may be supplied by the future indicative passive: *laudābiminī*.

<sup>2</sup>Declined like *magnus*, *a*, *um*.



## PASSIVE VOICE

IMPERATIVE MOOD<sup>1</sup>

(Present Stem)

289 mon-ēre  
mon-ēminī290 mitt-ere  
mitt-iminī291 aud-īre  
aud-īminī

## INFINITIVE

Present Tense

(Present Stem)

292 mon-ērī

293 mitt-ī

294 aud-irī

Perfect Tense

(Perfect participle passive with *esse*)295 monitus, a, um  
esse296 missus, a, um  
esse297 audītus, a, um  
esse

Future Tense

(Supine with *irī*)

298 monit-um irī

299 miss-um irī

300 audīt-um irī

## PARTICIPLE (VERBAL ADJECTIVE)

Perfect Tense

301 monit-us, a, um<sup>2</sup>302 miss-us, a, um<sup>2</sup>303 audīt-us, a, um<sup>2</sup>

## GERUNDIVE

(Present Stem)

304 mon-endus, a, um<sup>2</sup>305 mitt-endus, a, um<sup>2</sup>306 aud-iendus, a, um<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>The forms of the future imperative are: *monētor* (*mittitor*, *auditor*), 'you shall be advised (sent, heard)'; *monētor*, (*mittitor*, *auditor*), 'he shall be advised (sent, heard)'; *monentor* (*mittuntor*, *audiuntor*), 'they shall be advised (sent, heard)'. The second person plural may be supplied by the future indicative passive: *monēbiminī*, *mittēbiminī*, *audiēbiminī*.

<sup>2</sup>Declined like *magnus*, a, um.

## Declension of Participles.

- 307 a. The PRESENT PARTICIPLE ACTIVE is declined like *diligēns* (*diligentis*), No. 82, except in the ABLATIVE SINGULAR where it has *e*.

Thus:	<i>laudāns</i>	<i>laudāns</i>	<i>laudāns</i>
	<i>laudant-is</i>	<i>laudant-is</i>	<i>laudant-is</i>
	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>laudante</i>	<i>laudante</i>	<i>laudante</i>

Gallī fortiter pugnantēs occisī sunt.

*The Gauls fighting bravely were killed.*

Deō adjuvante, vincēmus.

*God helping, we shall conquer.*

## Note:

- 308 1. Occasionally a participle is used AS A NOUN.  
     Ā sapiente doctus est.  
     *He was taught by a wise man.*
- 309 2. A few participles may be used AS ADJECTIVES.  
     The ablative then ends in *ī*.  
     Caesar annō insequentī advēnit.  
     *Caesar arrived the following year.*

- 310 b. ALL OTHER PARTICIPLES are declined like *magnus*, *a, um*.

The future active: *laudātūrus, a, um*

Stem: *laudātūr-*

The perfect participle passive: *laudātus, a, um*

Stem: *laudāt-*

The gerundive: *laudandus, a, um*

Stem: *laudand-*

**-Iō Verbs of the Third Conjugation.**

- 311** -Iō verbs of the third conjugation can be distinguished by the endings of the first and second principal parts (-iō and -ere). Thus: *capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, 3, tr., take, capture*. These verbs have the endings of the **FOURTH CONJUGATION** in those forms where the endings of the fourth conjugation begin with **TWO VOWELS**: *e.g., capiēbam*. In all other forms they have the endings of the **THIRD CONJUGATION**. In the conjugation of the model verb (pages 68-69) all forms using the endings of the third conjugation are printed in **ITALICS**.

**CAPĪŌ, CAPERE, CĒPĪ, CAPTUS, 3, tr., take, capture.**

### ACTIVE VOICE

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE
	<i>Present</i>	<i>Present</i>	317 <i>S. cape</i> <i>P. capite</i>
312	S. { <i>capĭō</i> <i>capis</i> <i>capit</i>	315 <i>capiam</i> <i>capĭās</i> <i>capiat</i>	
	P. { <i>capimus</i> <i>capitis</i> <i>capiunt</i>	<i>capĭāmus</i> <i>capĭātis</i> <i>capiant</i>	318 <i>Pres. capere</i>
			INFINITIVE
	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	319 <i>Gen. capiendī</i> <i>Dat. capiendō</i> <i>Acc. capiendum</i> <i>Abl. capiendō</i>
313	S. { <i>capĭēbam</i> <i>capĭēbās</i> <i>capĭēbat</i>	316 <i>capērem</i> <i>capērēs</i> <i>caperet</i>	
	P. { <i>capĭēbāmus</i> <i>capĭēbātis</i> <i>capĭēbant</i>	<i>capērēmus</i> <i>capērētis</i> <i>caperent</i>	
			PARTICIPLE
	<i>Future</i>		320 <i>Pres. capiēns</i> ( <i>capient-is</i> )
314	S. { <i>capiam</i> <i>capĭēs</i> <i>capiet</i>	321 Note: All the tenses of the perfect system active are formed regularly on the perfect stem.	
	P. { <i>capĭēmus</i> <i>capĭētis</i> <i>capient</i>	Thus: <i>cēp-ī, cēp-istī, etc.</i>	

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERATIVE
322	<i>Present</i>	<i>Present</i>	327	<i>S. capere</i>
	<i>S.</i> { <i>capior</i>	325 <i>capiar</i>		<i>P. capimini</i>
	{ <i>caperis</i>	<i>capiāris</i>		
	{ <i>capitur</i>	<i>capiātur</i>		INFINITIVE
323	<i>P.</i> { <i>capimur</i>	<i>capiāmur</i>	328	<i>Pres. capi</i>
	{ <i>capimini</i>	<i>capiāmini</i>		
	{ <i>capiuntur</i>	<i>capiantur</i>		GERUNDIVE
	<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Imperfect</i>	329	<i>capiendus,</i> <i>a, um</i>
323	<i>S.</i> { <i>capiēbar</i>	326 <i>caperer</i>		
	{ <i>capiēbāris</i>	<i>caperēris</i>		
	{ <i>capiēbātur</i>	<i>caperētur</i>		
	<i>P.</i> { <i>capiēbāmur</i>	<i>caperēmur</i>		
324	{ <i>capiēbāmini</i>	<i>caperēmini</i>		
	{ <i>capiēbantur</i>	<i>caperentur</i>		
	<i>Future</i>			
	<i>S.</i> { <i>capiar</i>	330	Note: All the tenses of the perfect system passive are formed regularly by using the perfect participle passive with the required forms of sum.	
324	{ <i>capiēris</i>			
	{ <i>capiētur</i>			
	<i>P.</i> { <i>capiēmur</i>		Thus : <i>captus, a, um sum,</i> <i>es, etc.</i>	
	{ <i>capiēmini</i>			
	{ <i>capientur</i>			

**Impersonal Verbs.**

- 331** Impersonal verbs have no definite person or thing as their subject. They are used only in the **THIRD PERSON SINGULAR** of the indicative and subjunctive, and in the **INFINITIVE**. Whenever the tense is compound, the participle is **NEUTER**. In English the indefinite *it* serves as subject.

Licet.

*It is allowed.*

Factum est.

*It happened.*

Pluit.

*It rains.*

Licēre dīcō.

*I say (that) it is allowed.*

**Note:**

- 332** 1. Many personal verbs are sometimes used impersonally, especially in the passive.

Pugnō (*personal*).

*I fight.*

Ācriter pugnātum est (*impersonal*).

*There was bitter fighting.*

*(It was bitterly fought.)*

- 333** 2. Many verbs, however, are used impersonally only. Their principal parts are given thus:

**Licet, licēre, licuit, 2, intr.; dat. of person and infin., it is allowed.**

Mihi venīre licet.

*It is allowed (to) me to come.*

**Deponent Verbs.**

- 334** Some verbs have **PASSIVE FORMS** but **ACTIVE MEANINGS**. These are called deponent verbs. They have only three principal parts:

	<i>1st Sing. Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Present Infn.</i>	<i>1st Sing. Perf. Indic.</i>
<b>I</b>	<b>hortor</b>	<b>hortārī</b>	<b>hortātus sum, 1, tr., exhort</b>
<b>II</b>	<b>vereor</b>	<b>verērī</b>	<b>veritus sum, 2, tr., fear</b>
<b>III</b>	<b>sequor</b>	<b>sequī</b>	<b>secūtus sum, 3, tr., follow</b>
<b>III (-iō)</b>	<b>patior</b>	<b>patī</b>	<b>passus sum, 3, tr., suffer</b>
<b>IV</b>	<b>mōlior</b>	<b>mōlirī</b>	<b>mōlitus sum, 4, tr., set in motion</b>

- 335** Deponents are conjugated exactly like **laudor, moneor, mittor, capior, audior** (Nos. 243-306), except in the following:

1. the future infinitive,
2. present and future participle,
3. supine,
4. gerund and gerundive.

For clarity all the infinitives, participles, gerunds, supines, and gerundives of the deponents are given in full (pages 72-74).

## INFINITIVE

	INFINITIVE			
	I	II	III	IV
336	Present Tense (PASSIVE in form; ACTIVE in meaning)			
	hortārī, to exhort	verērī, to fear	sequī, to follow	pati, to suffer  mōlirī, to set in motion
337	Perfect Tense (PASSIVE in form; ACTIVE in meaning)			
	hortātus, a, um esse, to have exhorted	veritus, a, um esse, to have feared	secūtus, a, um esse, to have followed	mōlītus, a, um esse, to have set in motion
338	Future Tense (ACTIVE IN FORM AND MEANING!)			
	hortātūrus, a, um esse, to be about to exhort	veritūrus, a, um esse, to be about to fear	secūtūrus, a, um esse, to be about to follow	mōlītūrus, a, um esse, to be about to set in motion



PARTICIPLE

339	PARTICIPLE			
	I	II	III	IV
	hortāns (hortant-is) <i>exhorting</i>	verēns (verent-is) <i>fearing</i>	sequēns (sequent-is) <i>following</i>	patiēns (patient-is) <i>suffering</i>
				mōliēns (mōlient-is) <i>setting in motion</i>

340	Future Tense			
	(ACTIVE IN FORM AND MEANING!)			
	hortātūrus, a, um <i>being about to exhort</i> <i>about to exhort</i> <i>on the point of exhorting</i>	veritūrus, a, um <i>being about to fear</i> <i>about to fear</i> <i>on the point of fearing</i>	secūtūrus, a, um <i>being about to follow</i> <i>about to follow</i> <i>on the point of following</i>	passūrus, a, um <i>being about to suffer</i> <i>about to suffer</i> <i>on the point of suffering</i>
				mōlītūrus, a, um <i>being about to set in motion</i> <i>about to set in motion</i> <i>on the point of setting in motion</i>

341	Perfect Tense			
	(PASSIVE in form; ACTIVE in meaning)			
	hortātus, a, um <i>having exhorted</i>	veritus, a, um <i>having feared</i>	secūtus, a, um <i>having followed</i>	passus, a, um <i>having suffered</i>
				mōlītus, a, um <i>having set in motion</i>

342

## GERUND

(ACTIVE IN FORM AND MEANING!)

I	II	III	III (-iō)	IV
hortandī, of exhorting, etc.	verendī, of fearing, etc.	sequendī, of following, etc.	patiendī, of suffering, etc.	mōliendī, of setting in motion, etc.

343

## SUPINE

(ACTIVE IN FORM AND MEANING!)

hortātum	veritum	secūtum	passum	mōlitum
hortatū	veritū	secutū	passū	mōlitū

344

## GERUNDIVE

(PASSIVE IN FORM AND MEANING!)

hortandus, a, um (ought) to be exhorted	verendus, a, um (ought) to be feared	sequendus, a, um (ought) to be followed	patiendus, a, um (ought) to be suffered	mōliendus, a, um (ought) to be set in motion
--	---	--	--	---

**Semi-Deponent Verbs.**

- 345** A few verbs have ACTIVE FORMS in the present, imperfect, and future, and PASSIVE FORMS in the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, but ACTIVE MEANINGS in all forms.

**audeō, audēre, ausus sum, 2, intr.**      *dare (ausus sum:  
I dared)*

**gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, 2, intr.**      *rejoice*

**soleō, solēre, solitus sum, 2, intr.**      *am accustomed*

**fidō, fidere, fīsus sum, 3, intr.**      *trust*

## IRREGULAR VERBS

SUM, ESSE, FUI,<sup>1</sup> FUTŪRUS, *intr., am, be*

## INDICATIVE

346	Present	349	Perfect
S.	{ sum <i>I am</i>	fu-ī <sup>1</sup> <i>I have been, I was</i>	
	{ es <i>you are</i>	fu-istī <i>you have been, you were</i>	
	{ est <i>he, she, it is</i>	fu-it <i>he, she, it has been; he, she, it was</i>	
P.	{ sumus <i>we are</i>	fu-imus <i>we have been, we were</i>	
	{ estis <i>you are</i>	fu-istis <i>you have been, you were</i>	
	{ sunt <i>they are</i>	fu-ērunt <i>they have been, they were</i>	
347	Imperfect	350	Pluperfect
S.	{ eram <i>I was</i>	fu-eram <i>I had been</i>	
	{ erās <i>you were</i>	fu-erās <i>you had been</i>	
	{ erat <i>he, she, it was</i>	fu-erat <i>he, she, it had been</i>	
P.	{ erāmus <i>we were</i>	fu-erāmus <i>we had been</i>	
	{ erātis <i>you were</i>	fu-erātis <i>you had been</i>	
	{ erant <i>they were</i>	fu-erant <i>they had been</i>	
348	Future	351	Future Perfect
S.	{ erō <i>I shall be</i>	fu-erō <i>I shall have been</i>	
	{ eris <i>you will be</i>	fu-eris <i>you will have been</i>	
	{ erit <i>he, she, it will be</i>	fu-erit <i>he, she, it will have been</i>	
P.	{ erimus <i>we shall be</i>	fu-erimus <i>we shall have been</i>	
	{ eritis <i>you will be</i>	fu-eritis <i>you will have been</i>	
	{ erunt <i>they will be</i>	fu-erint <i>they will have been</i>	

<sup>1</sup>Note that the tenses of the perfect system are formed regularly on the perfect stem *fu-*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE

352	<i>Present</i>	354	<i>Perfect</i>
S.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \text{sim} & \text{I may be} \\ \text{sīs} & \text{you may be} \\ \text{sit} & \text{he, she, it} \\ & \text{may be} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \text{fu-erim} & \text{I may have been} \\ \text{fu-erīs} & \text{you may have been} \\ \text{fu-erit} & \text{he, she, it may} \\ & \text{have been} \end{array} \right.$	
P.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \text{sīmus} & \text{we may be} \\ \text{sītis} & \text{you may be} \\ \text{sint} & \text{they may be} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \text{fu-erīmus} & \text{we may have been} \\ \text{fu-erītis} & \text{you may have been} \\ \text{fu-erint} & \text{they may have been} \end{array} \right.$	
353	<i>Imperfect</i>	355	<i>Pluperfect</i>
S.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \text{essem} & \text{I might be} \\ \text{essēs} & \text{you might be} \\ \text{esset} & \text{he, she, it} \\ & \text{might be} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \text{fu-issem} & \text{I might have been} \\ \text{fu-issēs} & \text{you might have been} \\ \text{fu-isset} & \text{he, she, it might} \\ & \text{have been} \end{array} \right.$	
P.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \text{essēmus} & \text{we might be} \\ \text{essētis} & \text{you might be} \\ \text{essent} & \text{they might be} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \text{fu-issēmus} & \text{we might have been} \\ \text{fu-issētis} & \text{you might have been} \\ \text{fu-issent} & \text{they might have been} \end{array} \right.$	

## IMPERATIVE

356	S.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \text{es} & \text{be} \\ \text{estō} & \text{you shall be} \\ \text{estō} & \text{he shall be} \end{array} \right.$	357	P.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{ll} \text{este} & \text{be} \\ \text{estōte} & \text{you shall be} \\ \text{suntō} & \text{they shall be} \end{array} \right.$
-----	----	--	-----	----	---

## INFINITIVE

358	Pres.	esse	to be	359	Perf.	fu-isse	to have been
360	Fut.	{ futūrus, a, um esse fore <sup>1</sup> }					to be about to be

## PARTICIPLE

361	<i>Fut.</i>	futūrus, a, um	(being) about to be
-----	-------------	----------------	---------------------

<sup>1</sup>Fore remains unchanged in all genders and numbers.

EŌ, ĪRE, ĪVĪ(ĪĪ), ITUM, *intr.*, *go*.

FĪŌ, FIERĪ, FACTUS SUM, *intr.*, *am made, become, am done*.

FERŌ, FERRE, TULĪ, LĀTUS, *tr.*, *bear, carry, endure*.

362 Note: All the tenses not shown here are formed regularly.

### INDICATIVE

#### *Present Tense*

	<i>go</i>		<i>become</i>		<i>bear</i>		<i>Passive</i>
363	eō	366	fīō	369	ferō	372	feror
S.	īs		fīs		fers		ferris
	it		fīt		fert		fertur
	īmus		fīmus		ferimus		ferimur
P.	ītis		fītis		fertis		feriminī
	eunt		fīunt		ferunt		feruntur

#### *Imperfect Tense*

364	ībam	367	fīēbam	370	ferēbam	373	ferēbar
S.	ībās		fīēbās		ferēbās		ferēbāris
	ībat		fīēbat		ferēbat		ferēbātur
	ībāmus		fīēbāmus		ferēbāmus		ferēbāmur
P.	ībātis		fīēbātis		ferēbātis		ferēbāminī
	ībant		fīēbant		ferēbant		ferēbantur

#### *Future Tense*

365	ībō	368	fīam	371	feram	374	ferar
S.	ībīs		fīēs		ferēs		ferēris
	ībit		fīet		feret		ferētur
	ībimus		fīēmus		ferēmus		ferēmur
P.	ībītis		fīētis		ferētis		ferēminī
	ībunt		fīent		ferent		ferentur

SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present Tense*

				Active	Passive			
375	S.	eam	381	fiam	386	feram	392	ferar
		eās		fiās		ferās		ferāris
		eat		fiat		ferat		ferātur
	P.	eāmus		fiāmus		ferāmus		ferāmur
		eātis		fiātis		ferātis		ferāminī
		eant		fiant		ferant		ferantur

*Imperfect Tense*

376	S.	irem	382	fierem	387	ferrem	393	ferrer
		irēs		fierēs		ferrēs		ferrēris
		iret		fieret		ferret		ferrētur
	P.	irēmus		fierēmus		ferrēmus		ferrēmur
		irētis		fierētis		ferrētis		ferrēmini
		irent		fierent		ferrent		ferrentur

IMPERATIVE

377	S.	ī	383	fī	388	fer	394	ferre
	P.	īte		fīte		ferte		ferimini

INFINITIVE

378	īre	384	fieri	389	ferre	395	ferri
-----	-----	-----	-------	-----	-------	-----	-------

PARTICIPLE

379	iēns [eunt-is]	.....	390	ferēns	.....
-----	----------------	-------	-----	--------	-------

GERUND

380	eundī, etc.	.....	391	ferendī, etc.	.....
-----	-------------	-------	-----	---------------	-------

GERUNDIVE

.....	385	faciendus, a, um	.....	396	ferendus, a, um
-------	-----	------------------	-------	-----	-----------------

397 Eō has the impersonal passive forms: *itur, ibātur, itum est, eundum est*. The transitive compounds of *eō* form a full passive by changing the final personal signs; thus: *in-eor, in-iris, etc.; infn., in-irī; gerundive, ineundus, a, um*.

POSSUM,<sup>1</sup> POSSE, POTUI, *intr.*, *can*, *am able*.

VOLŌ, VELLE, VOLUI, *tr.*, *wish*, *am willing*.

NŌLŌ, NŌLLE, NŌLUI, *tr.*, *do not wish*, *am unwilling*.

MĀLŌ, MĀLLE, MĀLUI, *tr.*, *prefer*.

398 Note: All the tenses not shown here are formed regularly.

### INDICATIVE

#### *Present Tense*

399			402	volō	405	nōlō	408	mālō
S.	{	possum		vīs		nōn vīs		māvīs
		potes		vult		nōn vult		māvult
		potest						
P.	{	possumus		volumus		nōlumus		mālumus
		potestis		vultis		nōn vultis		māvultis
		possunt		volunt		nōlunt		mālunt

#### *Imperfect Tense*

400			403	volēbam	406	nōlēbam	409	mālēbam
S.	{	poteram		volēbās		nōlēbās		mālēbās
		poterās		volēbat		nōlēbat		mālēbat
		poterat						
P.	{	poterāmus		volēbāmus		nōlēbāmus		mālēbāmus
		poterātis		volēbātis		nōlēbātis		mālēbātis
		poterant		volēbant		nōlēbant		mālēbant

#### *Future Tense*

401			404	volam	407	nōlam	410	mālam
S.	{	poterō		volēs		nōlēs		mālēs
		poteris		volet		nōlet		mālet
		poterit						
P.	{	poterimus		volēmus		nōlēmus		mālēmus
		poteritis		volētis		nōlētis		mālētis
		poterunt		volent		nōlent		mālent

<sup>1</sup>The present, imperfect, and future indicative and the present subjunctive consist in a prefix and *sum*, *es*, etc.

Prefix 'pos' when the next letter will be 's'; e.g., 'pos sum' written *possum*.

Prefix *pot* when the next letter will be 'e'; e.g., 'pot es' written *potes*.



SUBJUNCTIVE

*Present Tense*

411	{	possim	414	velim	419	nōlim	425	mālim
S.	{	possīs		velīs		nōlīs		mālīs
	{	possit		velit		nōlit		mālit
P.	{	possīmus		velīmus		nōlimus		mālimus
	{	possītis		velītis		nōlītis		mālītis
	{	possint		velint		nōlint		mālint

*Imperfect Tense*

412	{	possem	415	vellem	420	nōllem	426	māllem
S.	{	possēs		vellēs		nōllēs		māllēs
	{	posset		vellet		nōllet		māllet
P.	{	possēmus		vellēmus		nōllēmus		māllēmus
	{	possētis		vellētis		nōllētis		māllētis
	{	possent		vellent		nōllent		māllent

IMPERATIVE

S.	-----	-----	421	nōlī	-----
P.	-----	-----		nōlite	-----

INFINITIVE

413	posse	416	velle	422	nōlle	427	mālle
-----	-------	-----	-------	-----	-------	-----	-------

PARTICIPLE

-----	417	volēns	423	nōlēns	428	mālēns
-----		(volent-is)		(nōlent-is)		(mālent-is)

GERUND

-----	418	volendī, etc.	424	nōlendī, etc.	429	mālendī, etc.
-------	-----	---------------	-----	---------------	-----	---------------

COEPĪ,<sup>1</sup> COEPISSE, COEPTUS, *tr.*, *have begun.*

MEMINĪ, MEMINISSE, *tr.*, *remember.*

ŌDĪ, ŌDISSE, ŌSUS, *tr.*, *hate.*

### INDICATIVE

#### *Perfect Tense*

430 *I began*  
coepī, *etc.*

436 *I remember*  
meminī, *etc.*

443 *I hate*  
ōdī, *etc.*

#### *Pluperfect Tense*

431 *I had begun*  
coeperam, *etc.*

437 *I remembered*  
memineram, *etc.*

444 *I hated*  
ōderam, *etc.*

#### *Future Perfect Tense*

432 *I shall have begun*  
coeperō, *etc.*

438 *I shall remember*  
meminerō, *etc.*

445 *I shall hate*  
ōderō, *etc.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE

#### *Perfect Tense*

433 coeperim, *etc.*

439 meminerim, *etc.* 446 ōderim, *etc.*

#### *Pluperfect Tense*

434 coepissem, *etc.*

440 meminisse, *etc.* 447 ōdissem, *etc.*

### IMPERATIVE

.....

441 *remember*  
mementō, -tōte

.....  
.....

### INFINITIVE

435 *to have begun*  
coepisse

442 *to remember*  
meminisse

448 *to hate*  
ōdisse

<sup>1</sup>When *coepī* governs a passive infinitive it is changed to the passive form, *coeptus sum*. It is, however, translated as active. Thus: *Eum laudāre coepī*, "I began to praise him," but: *Urbs aedificārī coepta est*, "The city began to be built."

PARTICIPLE

*Future Tense*

449 *about to begin*  
coeptūrus, a, um

451 *about to hate*  
ōsūrus, a, um

*Perfect Tense*

450 *begun*  
coeptus, a, um

INQUAM, *I say.*

*Present Tense*

452 inquam inquis      inquit      inquitimus      .....      inquiunt

*Imperfect Tense*

453 .....      .....      inquiēbat      .....      .....

*Future Tense*

454 .....      inquiēs      inquiet      .....      .....

*Perfect Tense*

455 .....      inquisti      inquit      .....      .....

AJŌ, *I say.*

*Present Tense*

456 ajō      ais      ait      .....      .....      ajunt

*Imperfect Tense*

457 ajēbam ajēbās      ajēbat      ajēbāmus      ajēbātis      ajēbant

*Present Subjunctive*

458 .....      ajās      ajat      .....      .....      ajant

QUAESŌ, *I beg, I entreat.*

*Present Indicative Active*

459 quaesō .....      .....      quaesumus .....      .....

## PART 2

### SYNTAX

#### ORDER OF WORDS

**460     The verb is last.**

Caesar Gallum interfēcit.

*Caesar killed a Gaul.*

Caesar, etsi in his locis hiemēs mātūrae sunt, in Britanniam proficiscī contendit.

*Although the winters in these regions are early, Caesar hastened to set out for Britain.*

**Note:**

- 461     1. Forms of the verb *sum*, *am*, may stand anywhere in the sentence.**

Deus est bonus.

Deus bonus est.

*God is good.*

- 462     2. The imperative more frequently stands first.**

Pugnāte, milītēs, fortiter.

*Fight bravely, soldiers.*

- 463     3. The vocative generally does not stand first.**

Pugnāte, milītēs, fortiter.

*Soldiers! fight bravely.*

- 464**     **Adjectives of *quantity*, *size*, and *number*,  
*demonstrative* and *interrogative* adjectives  
stand BEFORE the nouns they modify.**

Multī hominēs  
*Many men*

Trēs et vīgintī nautae  
*Twenty-three sailors*

Hic vir  
*This man*

Quem in locum?  
*Into which place?*

- 465**     **Adjectives of *quality*  
and *possessive* adjectives  
stand AFTER the nouns they modify.**

Vir bonus  
*A good man*

Pater meus  
*My father*

- 466**     ***Adverbs* and *ablatives*  
stand BEFORE the verbs and adjectives they modify.**

Equitēs celeriter vēnērunt.  
*The cavalry came swiftly.*

Laude dignus  
*Worthy of praise*

- 467 Temporal clauses,  
the ablative absolute,  
conditional and concessive clauses  
PRECEDE the main clause.  
Other clauses, especially result clauses,  
FOLLOW the main clause.

Cum eum dē hāc rē certiōrem fēcissent, abiērunt.  
*When they had informed him of this, they went away.*

Sī vim faciētis prohibēbō.  
*If you use force, I shall prevent you.*

Tanta erat tempestās ut nāvēs frangerentur.  
*There was so terrible a storm that the ships were destroyed.*

- 468 Note: Purpose clauses (more) often precede.

Ut eōs pācāret lēgātum mīsit.  
*He sent a lieutenant to pacify them.*

- 469 Words are put in unusual positions for emphasis, balance, or other rhetorical effects.

Aliud iter habēmus nullum.  
*We have no other way.*

## RULES OF AGREEMENT

- 470 A finite verb agrees with its subject in *person* and *number*.

Deus est.  
*God is.*

**Note:** With a COMPOUND subject:

- 471 1. Either the verb is plural; the first person is preferred to the second, the second to the third.

Ego et tū vēnimus.

*You and I have come.*

Tū et ille captī estis.

*You and he have been captured.*

- 472 2. OR the verb may agree with the nearest, especially when the verb stands before or between the subjects, or when the subjects are things.

Caesar vēnit et ego.

*Caesar and I came.*

Tempus necessitāsque postulat.

*The time and the need demand it.*

- 473 A predicate noun agrees with the subject, and an appositive agrees with its noun in case (if possible, also in gender and number).

Christus Rēx est.

*Christ is King.*

Nuntius ā Caesare, duce Rōmānōrum, missus est.

*The message was sent by Caesar, the leader of the Romans.*

- 474 A predicate adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

Vīta brevis est.

*Life is short.*

**Note:** With more than one subject:

- 475 1. If persons of different sexes, the predicate adjective is masculine.

Pater et filia mortuī sunt.

*Father and daughter are dead.*

- 476 2. If things of different genders, the predicate adjective agrees with the nearest or is neuter.

Impedimenta et equitātus secūtus est.

*The baggage and cavalry followed.*

Castella et vicī dēlēta sunt.

*The forts and the villages were destroyed.*

- 477 An attributive adjective agrees with its noun in *gender, number, and case*.

Mīles fortis pugnat.

*The brave soldier fights.*

- 478 Note: With more than one word the attributive adjective agrees with the nearest or is repeated with each.

Multi patrēs et filiae

Patrēs et filiae multae

Multi patrēs et multae filiae

*Many fathers and daughters*

- 479 A pronoun agrees with the word to which it refers, in *gender and number*; its *case* depends on its use in its own clause.

↖ Rōma est magna urbs. Vidistīne eam? ↗

*Rome is a large city. Have you seen it?*

↖ Contrā Germānōs exercitum dūxit. Hī sunt fortēs. ↗

*He led his army against the Germans. These are brave.*

↖ Mariā quam laudāmus Māter Dei est. ↗

*Mary, whom we praise, is the Mother of God.*



# MAIN CLAUSES

## USE OF THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

480 The action or state expressed by a verb has stage and time.

**Stage:** The action or state may be beginning, continuing, or completed.

**Time:** The action or state may be present, past, or future.

481 **Note:** In theory, therefore, nine different forms of the verb are possible in the indicative: three forms—representing the three different stages—for each of the three times. Actually, however, languages are more economical, using one form for two or more stages or times. Thus the present indicative in Latin represents the stages of beginning and continuing in present time. The precise meaning of such forms is indicated by the context.

482 The following chart shows the different stages and times expressed by the tenses of the Latin indicative:

		TIME		
		<i>Present</i>	<i>Future</i>	<i>Past</i>
STAGE	<i>Beginning</i>	<i>present tense</i> laudō <i>I (begin to)</i> <i>praise</i>	<i>future tense</i> laudābō <i>I shall (begin to)</i> <i>praise</i>	<i>historical perfect</i> laudāvī <i>I praised (began to)</i> <i>praise)</i>
		<i>present tense</i> laudō <i>I am praising</i>	<i>future tense</i> laudābō <i>I shall be praising</i>	<i>imperfect</i> laudābam <i>I was praising</i>
		<i>present perfect</i> laudāvī <i>I have praised</i>	<i>future perfect</i> laudāverō <i>I shall have praised</i>	<i>pluperfect</i> laudāveram <i>I had praised</i>

**The present tense expresses an action or state as :**

- 483 1. Begun, continued, or repeated in present time.  
Hūjus cīvitātis est longē amplissima auctōritās.  
*The influence of this nation is by far the greatest.*  
Jam diū mortem nostram cupis.  
*You have long (since) been desiring our death.*
- 484 2. Universally true.  
Omnēs hominēs libertātī student.  
*Everyone is eager for liberty.*
- 485 3. Happening in past time ; the past is put before our eyes as happening now (*historical present*).  
Circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt.  
*They surrounded the fellow and killed him.*  
(*They surround him and kill him.*)

**The imperfect tense expresses an action or state as :**

- 486 1. Begun, continued, or repeated (habitual) in past time.  
Nostra classis ūnā celeritāte praestābat.  
*Our fleet was superior in point of speed alone.*  
Jam prīdem mortem nostram cupiēbās.  
*You had long (since) been desiring our death.*
- 487 2. Happening at the same time as other past actions or states. It is, therefore, the *descriptive* tense of past time.  
Etsī hostēs oppugnābant, nostrī nōn timēbant.  
*Although the enemy were attacking, our men were not afraid.*
- 488 3. Attempted in past time.  
Eī persuādēbat ut ā Caesare dēficeret.  
*He was trying to persuade him to revolt against Caesar.*  
(*i. e., he was unsuccessfully attempting to persuade.*)

**The future tense expresses an action or state as :**

489

1. Begun, continued, or repeated in future time.

Quā laetitiā perfruēris!

*What pleasure will you enjoy!*

490

2. As generally true.

Ut sēmentem fēceris, ita metēs.

*As you sow, so shall you reap.*

491

**Note:** The future is sometimes equivalent to a command.

Hunc ā vitā cīvium arcēbis!

*Ward this man off from the lives of our citizens!*

*(You will ward this man off from the lives of our citizens!)*

**The perfect tense expresses an action or state as :**

492

1. Done in past time (*historical perfect*). It is, therefore, the *narrative* tense of past time.

Subitum autem bellum in Galliā coortum est.

*A sudden war, however, broke out in Gaul.*

493

2. Completed in present time (*present perfect*).

Vēnī.

*I have come.*

*(The act of coming is now completed.)*

**The pluperfect tense expresses an action or state as :**

494

1. Completed in past time.

Venetōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae erant.

*The ships of the Veneti had been (were) built in this way.*

*(The act of building was then completed.)*

- 495 2. Completed before another past act or state.

Nāvēs eōdem unde erant profectae revertērunt.

*The ships returned to the same place from which they had set out.*

(The *setting out* was before the past act of *returning*.)

**The future perfect tense expresses an action or state as:**

- 496 1. Completed in future time.

Hoc cūrāverō.

*This shall be my care.*

- 497 2. Completed before another future act or state.

Ut sēmentem fēceris, ita metēs.

*As you sow (will have sown), so shall you reap.*

(The *sowing* will be completed before the future act of *reaping*.)

## KINDS OF MAIN CLAUSES

### STATEMENTS

- 498 **Statements of fact are expressed in the indicative; negative: *nōn*.**

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs.

*Gaul taken as a whole is divided into three parts.*

#### Note:

- 499 1. The **present infinitive** is sometimes used in place of the **imperfect indicative** for vividness (*historical infinitive*).

Nostrī fortiter repugnāre.

*Our men were resisting vigorously.*

- 500 2. To state a modest judgment or a simple possibility the subjunctive is used, the present and perfect for present time, the imperfect for past time (*potential subjunctive*).

Velim (nōlim, mālim).

*I should like (not like, prefer).*

Dixerit aliquis.

*Someone may say.*

Vidērēs (cernerēs, putārēs).

*You might have seen (observed, thought).*

- 501 3. In the potential subjunctive the second person singular and the third person plural are usually **indefinite**.

Crēderēs.

One

You

A person

} *might have thought.*

## DIRECT QUESTIONS

**502**     **DEFINITION:** A direct question is one addressed directly to someone, and which uses the exact words of the original speaker.

Quis es? *Who are you?*

Centuriō, "Quis," inquit, "vēnit?"

*The centurion said, "Who came?"*

**503**     Direct questions are introduced by:

1. interrogative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs.
2. *nōnne* if the answer 'yes' is expected.
3. *num*     { if the answer 'no' is expected.  
                  to express surprise.
4. *-ne*     to ask for information.  
              (Add *-ne* to the emphatic word and put first in the sentence.)

**Pronoun:**     Quis es? *Who are you?*

**Adjective:**   Quam urbem oppugnāvērunt?  
                  *Which city did they attack?*

**Adverb:**     Ubi sunt? *Where are they?*

**Nōnne:**     Nōnne Deus est bonus?  
                  *God is good, isn't He?*  
                  *Isn't God good?* (Answer: 'yes.')

**Num:**        Num Caesar victus est?  
                  *Caesar wasn't conquered, was he?*  
                  *Surely Caesar wasn't conquered?*  
                  (Answer: 'no.')

**-Ne:**         Vidistīne Rōmam?  
                  *Have you seen Rome?*  
                  (Answer: "I have seen Rome" or "I have not seen Rome"; 'yes' or 'no.')

**Note:****1. DOUBLE QUESTIONS:**

- 504**      **Definition:** A double question is one that gives two alternatives:

(1)                      (2)  
*Will you fight or will you flee?*

- 505**      **Direct double questions are introduced by:**

1. **utrum . . . . an**
2. **-ne . . . . . an**
3. **. . . . . an**  
     ( . . . 'or not' is **annōn**)

*Will you fight or will you flee?*

*Utrum pugnābis an fugiēs?*

*Pugnābisne an fugiēs?*

*Pugnābis an fugiēs?*

*Will you fight or not?*

*Utrum pugnābis annōn?*

*Pugnābisne annōn?*

*Pugnābis annōn?*

- 506**      2. Sometimes no introductory word is used, especially when the question is asked in surprise.

*Vōcis expectās contumēliam?*

*Are you waiting for a spoken attack?*

3. **An** sometimes introduces single questions:

- 507**      a. When a preceding member is easily understood.

*Mōsne mājōrum impedit? An lēgēs?*

*Do our traditions prevent it? Or do the laws?*

- 508**      b. Implying a negative answer.

*An dubitāmus?*

*Or do we doubt it? (Absurd!)*

## DELIBERATIVE QUESTIONS

- 509 **DEFINITION:** A deliberative question is one asked in doubt or indignation about a course of action (what is or was to be done).
- 510 **A deliberative question is put in the subjunctive; present for present time; imperfect for past time; negative: *nōn*.**

**PRESENT TIME:** *Quid faciam?*

*What should I do?*

*What am I to do?*

*Hunc ego nōn diligam?*

*Should I not love this man?*

**PAST TIME:** *Quid facerent?*

*What were they to do?*

*Pecūniam nōn trāderem?*

*Was I not to hand over the money?*

## WISHES

- 511 1. **POSSIBLE** wishes are expressed by the **PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE** with *UTINAM*.  
(With the third person *utinam* is often omitted.)  
**Negative: *nē*.**

*(Utinam) nostrī vincant!*

*May our men conquer!*

(The battle is still going on; neither side has conquered as yet; it is still **POSSIBLE** for this wish to come true. Note that the English translation requires the auxiliary verb 'may.' *Utinam* is not translated.)

*Nē veniant.*

*May they not come.*



- 512 2. Wishes CONTRARY TO A PRESENT FACT**  
 are expressed by the  
**IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE** with *UTINAM*.  
**Negative: *nē*.**

*Utinam Caesar vīveret.*

*Would that Caesar were living.*

(The FACT is that Caesar is NOW dead; the wish is CONTRARY TO A PRESENT FACT. Note that the English is 'would that' and uses the English auxiliary verb 'were' or 'was'.)

*Utinam nē adesset.*

*Would that he was (were) not present.*

- 513 3. Wishes CONTRARY TO A PAST FACT**  
 are expressed by the  
**PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE** with *UTINAM*.  
**Negative: *nē*.**

*Utinam Pilātus Chrīstum dēfendisset.*

*Would that Pilate had defended Christ.*

(As a matter of FACT Pilate did NOT defend Christ. The wish is CONTRARY TO A PAST FACT. Note that the English uses the PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.)

*Utinam nē Chrīstum occīdisent.*

*Would that they had not killed Christ.*

## JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

- 514 Commands in the third person (he, she, it, they) are expressed by the PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.  
Negative: *nē*.

Impetum faciant.  
*Let them make an attack.*

Nē pugnet.  
*Let him not fight.*

## COMMANDS IN THE SECOND PERSON

In the second person:

- 515 1. Positive commands are expressed by the imperative, usually in the present tense.

Pugnāte fortiter.  
*Fight bravely.*

- 516 2. For negative commands use:  
a. *nōlī* ('be unwilling to') with the INFINITIVE.

Nōlī pugnāre.  
*Do not fight.*

- b. *nē* with the PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

Nē crēdideris.  
*Do not believe it.*

- c. *cavē* ('beware') or *vidē* ('see to it') with *nē* and the PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

Cavē nē timeās.  
*Do not be afraid.*

- 517 Note: The second person present subjunctive is used in commands (negative: *nē*) when the subject is indefinite and general or in very familiar speech.

Quidquid agis, prūdenter agās.  
*Whatever you do, do it wisely.*

## HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

- 518** An exhortation in the first person plural is expressed by the PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

Negative: *nē*.

*Pugnēmus.*

*Let us fight.*

*Nē cēdāmus.*

*Let us not yield.*

(Note that English uses the verb 'let' and puts the person in the accusative; the Latin makes the person the subject of the main verb.)

## CONCESSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

- 519** The subjunctive, sometimes preceded by *ut*, is used to show that something is 'granted' or 'conceded.'  
Present tense for present time;  
perfect tense for past time;  
negative: *nē*.

PRESENT TIME: *Sit vērum.*

*Granted that it is true.*

*I grant that it is true.*

(Lit.: *Let it be true.*)

*Ut ita sit.*

*Granted that it is so.*

PAST TIME:

*Nē fuerit fortis.*

*Granted that he was not brave.*

*I grant that he was not brave.*

*Suppose he was not brave.*

## SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

### TENSES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

- 520** Tenses in subordinate clauses are generally determined by one of the following principles (Nos. 521-545). The particular rules for the various subordinate clauses (purpose clauses, temporal clauses, *etc.*) will indicate in each case which principle is to be followed (*e. g.*, see No. 550).

#### 1. TENSE BY SENSE

- 521** The tenses of the indicative have the same meanings as in simple sentences.

Legiōnēs quās nūper cōscripserat aderant.

*The legions which he had recently enrolled were present.*

- 522** The tenses of the subjunctive have the same meanings as the corresponding tenses of the indicative.

- 523** **Note:** However, the Latin, in general, is more careful than the English in marking relations of time.

Cum Rōmam vēnerō, tē vidēbō.

*When I come to Rome, I shall see you.*

(The 'coming' is before the 'seeing'; therefore, the future perfect is used.)

## 2. TENSE BY SEQUENCE

The tense in many subordinate **SUBJUNCTIVE** clauses is determined by the rules for the **SEQUENCE OF TENSES**.

- 524** **Primary and Secondary Tenses.** The tenses of the indicative and subjunctive are divided into two groups:

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
Present Future Future Perfect	These are PRIMARY tenses	{ Present Perfect
Imperfect Perfect Pluperfect		{ Imperfect Pluperfect

- 525** **Primary Sequence.**

When the verb in the main clause is a **PRIMARY TENSE**, the verb in the subordinate clause must be a **PRIMARY** tense.

Rogō quis veniat.      *I ask who is coming.*  
 Rogābō quis veniat.      *I shall ask who is coming.*  
 Rogāverō quis veniat.      *I shall have asked who is coming.*

- 526** **Secondary Sequence.**

When the verb in the main clause is a **SECONDARY TENSE**, the verb in the subordinate clause must be a **SECONDARY** tense.

Rogāvī quis essēs.      *I asked who you were.*  
 Rogābam quis essēs.      *I was asking who you were.*  
 Rogāveram quis essēs.      *I had asked who you were.*

**In Primary Sequence:**

- 527** 1. When the action of the subordinate verb happens **BEFORE** the action of the main verb, the **PERFECT** subjunctive must be used.

Rogō quis vēnerit. *I ask who came.*

Rogābō quis vēnerit. *I shall ask who came.*

Rogāverō quis vēnerit. *I shall have asked who came.*

(In all these sentences the action of 'coming' happens before the action of 'asking'.)

- 528** 2. When the action of the subordinate verb happens **AT THE SAME TIME AS** the action of the main verb, the **PRESENT** subjunctive must be used.

Rogō quid videās. *I ask what you see.*

Rogābō quid videās. *I shall ask what you are seeing.*

Rogāverō quid videās. *I shall have asked what you are seeing.*

(In all these sentences the action of 'seeing' happens at the same time as the action of 'asking'.)

- 529** 3. When the action of the subordinate verb **WILL HAPPEN AFTER** the action of the main verb the **PRESENT** subjunctive must be used.

Veniō ut videam. *I am coming to see.*

(The 'seeing' will happen after the 'coming'.)

- 530** **Note:** But in indirect questions and quīn-clauses, sometimes in result clauses and other clauses (especially for clarity or emphasis), the future participle active (-ūrus, a, um) is used as a predicate adjective with the present subjunctive of sum (sim, etc.).

Rogō quis ventūrus sit. <i>I ask who</i>	{	<i>will come.</i> <i>is about to come.</i> <i>is going to come.</i>
--	---	---

**In Secondary Sequence:**

- 531 1. When the action of the subordinate verb happens **BEFORE** the action of the main verb, the **PLUPERFECT** subjunctive must be used.

Rogāvī quis advēnisset. *I asked who had come.*

(The 'coming' happened before the 'asking'.)

- 532 2. When the action of the subordinate verb happens **AT THE SAME TIME AS** the action of the main verb, the **IMPERFECT** subjunctive must be used in the subordinate clause.

Rogāvī quis pugnāret. *I asked who was fighting.*

(The 'fighting' happens at the same time as the 'asking'.)

- 533 3. When the action of the subordinate verb happens **AFTER** the action of the main verb, the **IMPERFECT** subjunctive must be used.

Vēnit ut urbem oppugnāret.

*He came to attack the city.*

(The 'attacking' happens after the 'coming'.)

- 534 **Note:** In indirect questions and quīn-clauses, sometimes in result clauses and other clauses (especially for clarity or emphasis), the future participle active (**-ūrus, a, um**) is used as a predicate adjective with the imperfect of *sum* (*essem, etc.*)

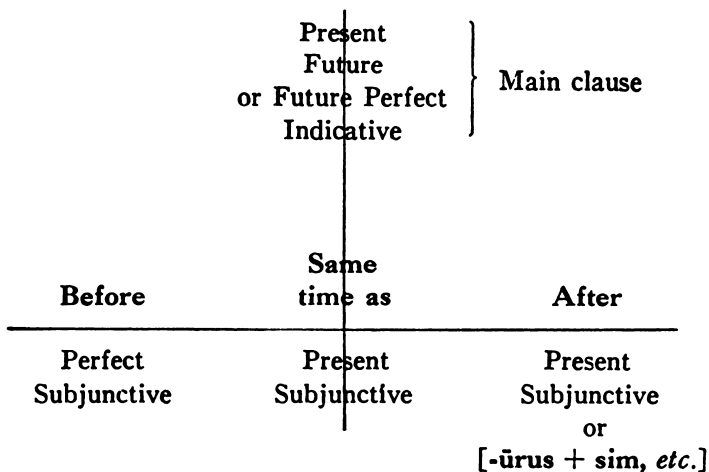
Rogāvī quis ventūrus esset.

*I asked* { *who was going to come.*  
               *who would come.*  
               *who was about to come.*

## 535 SUMMARY DIAGRAM

The vertical line represents the **TIME** of the **ACTION OF THE MAIN VERB**. At the top of this line the primary or secondary tenses of the indicative are shown. The horizontal line represents the time of the action of the subordinate clause. The required tenses of the subjunctive are indicated for the three times possible: (1) before the main action, (2) at the same time as the main action, (3) after (future to) the main action. Understand and memorize this outline. It will enable you to explain any tense by sequence.

## 536 PRIMARY SEQUENCE:





537 SECONDARY SEQUENCE:

<div> <div> Imperfect Perfect or Pluperfect Indicative </div> <div> Main clause </div> </div>		
<div> <div>Before</div> <div>Same time as</div> <div>After</div> </div>		
Pluperfect Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive	Imperfect Subjunctive or [-ūrus + essem, etc.]

Note:

- 538 1. A subjunctive dependent on a SUBORDINATE infinitive, supine, gerund, gerundive, participle, or subjunctive takes its sequence not from one of these but from the MAIN VERB.

Cōstituī ad tē venīre ut tē vidērem.

*I determined to come to you to see you.*

(The subjunctive **vidērem** depends on the PRESENT infinitive **venīre** but is in secondary sequence because of the main verb, **cōstituī**.)

- 539 2. However, a subjunctive dependent on a SUBORDINATE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OR A PERFECT INFINITIVE is usually in SECONDARY SEQUENCE, regardless of the main verb.

Videor multa verba fēcisse ut tibi persuādērem.

*I seem to have spoken at great length to persuade you.*

(**Persuādērem** depends on the perfect infinitive **fēcisse** and is therefore SECONDARY despite the PRIMARY main verb **videor**.)

- 540** 3. The present perfect (*e. g.*, *vēnī*, *I HAVE come*) generally takes secondary, sometimes primary, sequence.

*Vēnī ut tēcum loquar.*

*I have come to speak with you.*

- 541** 4. The historical present may take either sequence.

Mandat ut quam primum  $\begin{cases} \text{revertātur.} \\ \text{reverterētur.} \end{cases}$

*He instructed him to return at the earliest possible moment.*

(Mandat is the present indicative but is used in context of a past action for vividness. See No. 485.)

### 3. TENSES IN STATEMENTS OF GENERAL TRUTHS OR REPEATED ACTION

- 542** Complex sentences which express a GENERAL truth or REPEATED action regularly have the INDICATIVE in both main and subordinate clauses. This rule holds when the subordinate clause is introduced by a temporal conjunction (*cum*, *when*, *quandocumque*, *whenever*, *ubi*, *when*, *etc.*), a conditional conjunction (*sī*, *if*, *nisi*, *unless*), a relative adverb (*ubi*, *where*, *etc.*), a relative pronoun (*quī*, *quae*, *quod*, *who*, *what*, *that*, *quicumque*, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque*, *whoever*, *whatever*, *etc.*).

The TENSES are determined by the following rules (Nos. 543-545):

**543 1. IN PRESENT TIME:****MAIN clause: PRESENT tense.****SUBORDINATE clause:**

1. To express action before the main verb: **PERFECT** tense;
2. To express action at the same time as the main verb: **PRESENT** tense.

Quandōcumque domum rediī, dormiō.

*Whenever I come home, I sleep.*

(I come home BEFORE I sleep; hence, **PERFECT TENSE**, rediī.)

Quandōcumque hunc librum legō, multum discō.

*Whenever I read this book, I learn much.*

**544 2. IN PAST TIME:****MAIN clause: IMPERFECT tense.****SUBORDINATE clause:**

1. To express action before the main verb: **PLUPERFECT** tense;
2. To express action at the same time as the main verb: **IMPERFECT** tense.

Quandōcumque domum redieram, dormiēbam.

*Whenever I returned home, I slept.*

(I returned home BEFORE I slept; hence **PLUPERFECT TENSE**, redieram.)

Sī hunc librum legēbam, multum discēbam.

*If (ever) I read this book, I learned much.*

**545 3. IN FUTURE TIME:**

**MAIN clause: FUTURE tense.**

**SUBORDINATE clause:**

1. To express action before the main verb: **FUTURE PERFECT tense**;
2. To express action at the same time as the main verb: **FUTURE tense**.

Cum domum redierō, dormiam.

*Whenever I come home, I shall sleep.*

(I come home BEFORE I sleep; hence, **FUTURE PERFECT TENSE**, redierō.)

Quicumque hunc librum leget multum discet.

*Whoever reads this book, will learn much.*

## ADVERBIAL CLAUSES

### PURPOSE CLAUSES

546 Purpose clauses are introduced by:

1. *ut* (negative: *nē*),
2. *quī, quae, quod*,<sup>1</sup>
3. *quō* (negative: *nē*) before a comparative;

Mood: subjunctive;

Tense: after a *primary* tense, use the *present*;  
after a *secondary* tense, use the *imperfect*.

Pugnō ut vincam.

<i>I fight</i>	{	<i>to conquer.</i> <i>in order that I may conquer.</i> <i>that I may conquer.</i> <i>in order to conquer.</i> <i>for the purpose of conquering.</i> <i>for the sake of conquering.</i>
----------------	---	---

Pugnāvī ut vincerem.

<i>I fought</i>	{	<i>in order that I might conquer.</i> <i>in order to conquer.</i> <i>that I might conquer.</i> <i>to conquer.</i> <i>for the purpose of conquering.</i> <i>for the sake of conquering.</i>
-----------------	---	---

Pugnō nē vincar.

*I fight lest I be conquered.*

*I fight that I may not be conquered.*

---

<sup>1</sup>See No. 625 for purpose clauses introduced by a relative and Nos. 637, 639 for noun clauses of purpose.

**Note:**

- 547** 1. **Quō** (negative: **nē**) is used when the purpose clause contains a **comparative** adverb or adjective.
- Urbem mūnīvit quō facilius eam dēfenderet.  
*He fortified the city that he might more easily defend it.*
- Militēs in castra vocāvit nē diūtius pugnārent.  
*He called the soldiers into the camp lest they fight longer.*
- 548** 2. *And in order that . . . not* is **nēve** (**neu**).
- 549** 3. *That no one . . . is* **nē quis** (*lest anyone*).  
*That never . . . is* **nē umquam** (*lest ever*).  
*That nothing . . . is* **nē quid** (*lest anything*).  
*That nowhere . . . is* **nēcubi** (*lest anywhere*).

**RESULT CLAUSES**

- 550** **Result clauses** are introduced by:
- ut* (negative: *ut nōn*),
  - quī, quae, quod*;<sup>1</sup>
- subjunctive;  
 tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537, but see Nos. 554, 555).

Sic vītam ēgit ut omnēs eum laudārent.  
*He so lived that everyone praised him.*

Sic vītam ēgit ut multī eum nōn laudārent.  
*He so lived that many did not praise him.*

<sup>1</sup>See No. 626 for result clauses introduced by a relative and Nos. 637-638 for noun clauses of result.

**Note:**

- 551** 1. The main clause usually contains an adverb of degree or manner or a similar adjective:
- |               |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| tālis, e      | <i>such, of such a kind</i>       |
| tantus, a, um | <i>so great</i>                   |
| sic; ita      | <i>so, in such a manner</i>       |
| tam; adeō     | <i>so, to such a degree, etc.</i> |
- 552** 2. When both the main clause and the result clause are **NEGATIVE**, *quīn* may be used for *ut nōn*.
- Nihil tam difficile est quīn quaerendō invēstigārī possit.  
*Nothing is so difficult that it can not be discovered by searching.*
- 553** 3. *Quam ut* is used to denote result after **COMPARATIVES**.
- Fortior erat quam ut fugeret.  
*He was too brave to flee.*  
 (Lit.: *He was braver than that he should flee.* Note that the English regularly uses *too* and the infinitive in such sentences.)
- 554** 4. To emphasize the actual occurrence of a past result or to indicate that the result continues up to the present, the **PERFECT** is used in **SECONDARY** sequence.
- Hostēs tot erant ut dēvictī sīmus.  
*The enemy were so numerous that we were (actually) defeated.*
- 555** 5. To express the present result of a past action, the **PRESENT** subjunctive is used in **SECONDARY** sequence.
- Adulēscēns tam strēnuē labōrāvī ut dīves nunc sīm.  
*I worked so hard as a youth that I am now rich.*

## TEMPORAL CLAUSES

556	<i>Ut, ubi</i>	'when'	} when expressing a <i>single<sup>1</sup> past act take the PERFECT INDICATIVE.</i>
	<i>postquam</i>	'after'	
	<i>posteaquam</i>		
	<i>simul ac</i>	'as soon as'	
	<i>simul atque</i>		
	<i>ubi primum</i>		
	<i>ut primum</i>		
	<i>cum primum</i>		

Ubi Caesarem vīdērunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt.  
*When they saw Caesar, they sent envoys to him.*

Ut hoc vīdit, equitātum praemīsīt.  
*When he saw this, he sent the cavalry ahead.*

Caesar, postquam id vīdit, equitātum praemīsīt.  
*After he had seen this, Caesar sent forward the cavalry.*

Simul atque dē Caesaris adventū certiōrēs factī sunt,  
fūgērunt.  
*As soon as they were informed of the arrival of Caesar,  
they fled.*

Ubi Caesarem vīdērunt, lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt.  
*When they saw Caesar, they sent envoys to him.*

Ut hoc vīdit, equitātum praemīsīt.  
*When he saw this, he sent the cavalry ahead.*

Caesar, postquam id vīdit, equitātum praemīsīt.  
*After he had seen this, Caesar sent forward the cavalry.*

Simul atque dē Caesaris adventū certiōrēs factī sunt,  
fūgērunt.  
*As soon as they were informed of the arrival of Caesar,  
they fled.*

## Note:

- 557 1. Even where the English has the PLUPERFECT, these conjunctions generally take the PERFECT.

*When Caesar had seen this, he sent the cavalry ahead.*  
Caesar, ubi hoc vīdit, equitātum praemīsīt.

<sup>1</sup>When expressing repeated action, these clauses follow the rules given in No. 544.



- 558 2. If the interval of time (after which) is expressed, however, *postquam* regularly takes the pluperfect.

Tertiō diē *postquam* vēnerat eum vidī.

(or: Tertiō post diē quam, etc.)

*I saw him on the third day after he came.*

- 559 **CUM**, 'when,' when referring to PRESENT or FUTURE time takes the INDICATIVE;  
TENSE BY SENSE (Nos. 521-523).

Cum adest, nihil timēmus.

*When he is present, we fear nothing.*

Cum nōn erō, quid sentiam?

*When I shall not exist, what shall I feel?*

Cum in Galliam pervēnerō, pācem vōbīscum faciam.

*When I come (shall have come) to Gaul, I shall make peace with you.*

**CUM**, 'when,' when referring to PAST time:

- 560 1. If it sets the point of time (usually *tum*, *eō tempore* or a similar expression is found in the main clause): INDICATIVE;  
TENSE BY SENSE (Nos. 521-523).

Tum, cum haec gerēbantur, Caesar in Galliā erat.

*At the time when these things were happening, Caesar was in Gaul.*

- 561**     2. If it describes the circumstances:  
**SUBJUNCTIVE;**  
**TENSE BY SEQUENCE (Nos. 524-537).**

Cum equitēs in silvis pugnārent, Caesar militēs (trāns) flūmen trādūxit.

*When the cavalry were fighting in the forest, Caesar led the troops across the river.*

Caesar, cum hostēs vidisset, legiōnēs prō castris instrūxit.

*When Caesar had seen the enemy, he drew up the legions in front of the camp.*

**Note:**

- 562**     1. In some sentences the main action is put in the **cum**-clause. The imperfect or pluperfect indicative is then used in the main clause, and the perfect or historical present indicative in the **cum**-clause (*cum inversum*).

Hostēs jam oppugnābant, cum subitō vīsus est Caesar.

*The enemy were already attacking, when suddenly Caesar appeared.*

(The main action is the appearance of Caesar.)

Vix dixerat, cum miles cecidit (cadit) in terram.

*The soldier had just spoken, when he fell to the ground.*

- 563**     2. When expressing **REPEATED** action, **cum**-clauses follow the rules given in Nos. 542-545.

*Dum (dōnec), quoad,* 'until' } take:  
*antequam, antequam, priusquam,* 'before' }

- 564 1. The indicative when the subordinate action merely follows the main action (the subordinate clause simply states an *actual fact*).

*Ē vitā excessit antequam sōl ortus est.*

*He died before the sun rose.*

(It happened that the sun rose after his death. Merely the FACT is stated.)

Note:

- 565 1. The subjunctive *may* be used even in this case with *antequam, antequam, and priusquam*, but generally the indicative is used.

- 566 2. Generally only the present, perfect, and future perfect indicative are used; instead of the pluperfect, the perfect is used; instead of the future, the present.

2. The subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537):

- 567 a. when the agent of the main action *anticipates (intends, acts to prevent)* the subordinate action.

*Horātius impetum hostium sustinuit, quoad cēterī pontem interrumperent.*

*Horatius held off the enemy until the others should break down the bridge.*

(Horatius deliberately held off the enemy so that the others could break down the bridge.)

- 568 b. when the subordinate action is merely *possible*.

*Priusquam satis certa cōsilia essent, alia clādēs nuntiātur.*

*Before very definite plans could be formed, another disaster was reported.*

(The subordinate clause states a *possibility*.)

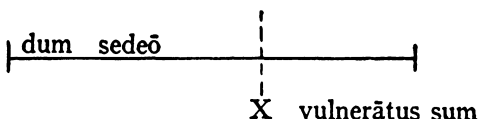
*Dum*, 'while,' 'as long as':

- 569 1. If the time of the *dum*-clause is **LONGER** than the time of the main clause, the **PRESENT** indicative is *always* used in the *dum*-clause.

Dum in hortō sedeō, vulnerātus sum.

*While I was sitting in the garden, I was wounded.*

In this diagram the solid (horizontal) line represents the duration of the time in the *dum*-clause. The dotted (vertical) line represents the time at which the wounding occurred.

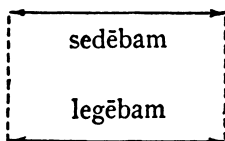


- 570 2. If the time of the two clauses is of the **SAME LENGTH**, the indicative and the **SAME TENSE** as that in the main clause is used in the *dum*-clause.

Dum in hortō sedēbam, legēbam.

*While (i.e., as long as) I was sitting in the garden, I read (was reading).*

In this diagram the solid horizontal lines represent the length of time in the two clauses.



- 571 **Note:** Quoad and quamdiū, *as long as*, follow the second rule (No. 570) for *dum*.

## CAUSAL CLAUSES

*Quod, quia, quoniam*, 'because,' take:

- 572 1. The INDICATIVE when the reason is given as the real reason (i. e., the reason is an objective fact and the writer is willing to take responsibility for its being the real reason).

Quod miles fortis nōn fuit, fūgit.

*Because the soldier was not brave, he fled.*

(The soldier was actually a coward. That is the reason for his fleeing, and the writer or speaker is willing to vouch for its truth.)

- 573 2. The SUBJUNCTIVE (TENSE BY SEQUENCE, Nos. 524-537) when the reason is given as the reason alleged (i. e., the reason may or may not be an objective fact, but it is the reason that people other than the speaker or writer give for the action in the main clause).

Quod miles fortis nōn fuisset, fūgit.

*Because the soldier was not brave, he fled.*

(The soldier may or may not have been brave, but people other than the writer give that as the reason for his fleeing.)

Imperātor lēgātum laudat quod fortiter pugnāverit.

*The commander praises the lieutenant because he fought bravely.*

(The lieutenant may or may not have fought bravely, but that is the commander's reason for praising him.)

**Note:**

- 574 1. The REJECTED REASON is expressed by *nōn quod* or *nōn quō*, *not because*, with the subjunctive (tense by sequence, Nos. 524-537).

*Eam amō nōn quod pulchra sit sed quod bona est.*  
*I love her NOT BECAUSE SHE IS BEAUTIFUL but because she is good.*  
 (*Nōn quod pulchra sit* is the *rejected reason*.)

- 575 **Note:** If the rejected reason is a FACT, the indicative may be used.

*Eam amō nōn quod pulchra est sed quod bona est.*  
*I love her NOT BECAUSE SHE IS BEAUTIFUL but because she is good.*  
 (It is a *fact* that she is beautiful, but that is *not my reason* for loving her.)

- 576 2. After verbs meaning *praise, blame, accuse, admire*, and the like, the subjunctive construction is generally used.

*Laudat Africānum quod fuerit abstinēns.*  
*He praises Africanus for having been self-controlled.*  
 (Lit.: *because he was self-controlled*.)

- 577 3. *Quandō, sīquidem, quandōquidem*, *seeing that, inasmuch as*, take the indicative.

*Id omittō, quandō vōbīs ita placet.*  
*I pass that over, seeing that you so wish.*

- 578 *Cum*, 'since,' takes the subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).<sup>1</sup>

*Quae cum ita sint, discēde!*  
*Since this is the case, depart!*

<sup>1</sup>See No. 627 for causal clauses introduced by a relative.

- 579 With verbs of emotion<sup>1</sup> the reason is expressed by:
1. *quod*: subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).
  2. *quod*: indicative; tense by sense (Nos. 521-523).
  3. accusative with the infinitive; tense by relation (Nos. 885-887).

Gaudeō quod vēnerīs.

*I am glad that you (should) have come.*

Gaudeō quod vēnistī.

*I am glad that you have come.*

Gaudeō tē vēnisse.

*I am glad that you have come.*

- 580 **Note:** The ablative of cause (No. 781) or *propter*, *because* of (No. 992), etc., may of course also be used.

Hāc victōriā gaudeō.

*I rejoice at (on account of) this victory.*

---

<sup>1</sup>Verbs expressing joy, sorrow, surprise, anger, etc., such as *gaudeō*, *laetor*, *doleō*.

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

**There are three types of conditional sentences.**

#### 581 1. NOTHING IMPLIED:

When the condition is merely stated without any implication as to the TRUTH or REALITY of the conditional clause (i. e., *sī*-clause).

##### *Sī*-CLAUSE: INDICATIVE

TENSE BY SENSE (Nos. 521-523).

**MAIN CLAUSE:** Any construction that an independent clause may have (indicative; imperative; potential subjunctive; etc.).

*Sī hoc vērum est, vōbiscum pācem faciam.*

*If this is true, I shall make peace with you.*

(It is not indicated whether it is true or not.)

*Sī Rōmam adieris, Tiberim vidēbis.*

*If you go to Rome, you will see the Tiber.*

(It is not indicated whether you will go to Rome or not.)

#### 582 2. SHOULD-WOULD:

The condition is stated as a mere *supposition* (English *should*).

##### BOTH CLAUSES: SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT or (RARELY)  
perfect without difference of  
meaning.

*Sī veniat, eum interficiam.*

*Sī vēnerit, eum interfēcērim.*

*If he should come, I would kill him.*



## 583 3. CONTRARY-TO-FACT:

The condition is stated as IMPOSSIBLE or UNTRUE.

## BOTH CLAUSES: SUBJUNCTIVE

For present time, IMPERFECT.

For past time, PLUPERFECT.

*Sī adesset, eum interficerem.*

*If he were here, I would kill him.*

*Were he here, I would kill him.*

(It is implied that he is *NOT* here *NOW*; present contrary-to-fact.)

*Sī adfuisset, eum interfēcissem.*

*If he had been present, I would have killed him.*

*Had he been present, I would have killed him.*

(It is implied that he *WAS NOT PRESENT*; past contrary-to-fact.)

## Note:

- 584 1. **NISI**, *if . . . not, unless*, negatives the entire conditional clause. It is particularly used when the MAIN clause is itself **NEGATIVE**.

Nisi id fēceris, tē interficiam.

Unless you do this, I shall kill you.

Civitas cōservārī nōn potest nisi civēs fortēs sunt.

A state cannot be preserved { if the citizens are not brave.  
unless the citizens are brave.

- 585 2. **Sī . . . nōn**, *if . . . not*, negatives a single word in the conditional sentence. (However, **nisi** and **sī . . . nōn** are sometimes used without difference of meaning.)

Sī id nōn fēceris, tē interficiam.

If you do not do it, I shall kill you.

(**Fēceris** is emphatically negated.)

- 586 3. *Sī . . . nōn* is regularly used when the MAIN clause contains *at*, *tamen*, *certē*, or some other word expressing OPPOSITION.

*Virtūs, sī amicitiam nōn gignit, certē cōservat.*

*Virtue, if it does not give rise to friendship, certainly preserves it.*

- 587 4. *But if* is *sīn* or *sīn autem*:

*Hunc mihi timōrem ēripe, sī vērus est, nē opprimar, sīn falsus, ut timēre dēsinam.*

*Remove this fear from me; if it is well founded, that I may not be overcome, but if it is groundless, that I may cease to fear.*

- 588 5. *But if not* is *sī minus*, *sīn minus*, *sīn aliter*, or *sī . . . nōn*.

*Ēdūc etiam omnēs tuōs, sīn minus, quam plūrimōs.*

*Lead out also all of your followers, but if not (all), as many as possible.*

- 589 6. *Whether . . . or* and *if . . . or if* is *sīve (seu) . . . sīve (seu)*.

*Sīve fēcit, sīve nōn fēcit, pūniētur.*

*Whether  
If* } *he did it or not, he will be punished.*

- 590 7. In the main clause of a contrary-to-fact condition the indicative is regularly used with the GERUNDIVE and with the FUTURE PARTICIPLE.

*Sī nōn esset cīvis, ascēscendus fuit.*

*If he were not a citizen, he should have been enrolled (a long time ago).*

*Sī advēnisset, quid fuistī factūrus?*

*If he had come, what would you have done?*

- 591 8. With *possum*, *dēbeō*, *oportet*, when the possibility or obligation itself is not contrary to fact, the indicative (usually imperfect or pluperfect) is used in contrary-to-fact conditions. Otherwise these verbs follow the general rule.

*Sī voluisset, poterat mē adjuvāre.*

*If he had wished, he was able to help me.*

(The possibility is real.)

*Nisi aegrōtārem, tē adjuvāre possem.*

*If I were not ill, I would be able to help you.*

(The possibility is contrary to fact.)

- 592 9. The IMPERFECT subjunctive is sometimes used in the *sī*-clause of PAST contrary-to-fact conditions to express CONTINUING PAST ACTION (or state) or action contemporary with some other past action.

*Laelius, Furius, Catō, sī nihil litterīs adjuvārentur, numquam sē ad eārum studium contulissent.*

*Laelius, Furius, and Cato would never have devoted themselves to the study of letters, unless they had been (continuously) helped by them.*

- 593 10. The construction of conditional sentences may be mixed if the sense requires it.

*Sī mēns nōn laeva fuisset, Trōja nunc stāret.*

*If our mind had not been perverse, Troy would now be standing.*

(Present and past contrary-to-fact.)

### CLAUSES EXPRESSING A PROVISIO OR A CONDITIONAL WISH

- 594 *Modo, dum, dummodo, and sī modo,*  
'if only,' 'provided only,' 'as long as,' take the  
SUBJUNCTIVE if a wish or intention is implied;  
tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537);  
negative: *nē*.

*Ōderint, dum metuant.*

*Let them hate, provided only they fear.*

*Magnō mē metū liberābis, modo inter mē atque tē mūrus  
intēsit.*

*You will free me from a great fear, if only there be a wall  
between you and me.*

*Manēbō dummodo tū nē fugiās.*

*I shall remain provided you do not flee.*

### ADVERSATIVE AND CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

- 595 1. *Quamquam*,<sup>1</sup> 'although,' generally states a FACT:  
indicative; tense by sense (Nos. 521-523).

*Quamquam dīves est, beātus nōn est.*

*Although he is rich, he is not happy.*

- 596 2. *Cum*, 'although';  
*ut* (negative: *nē*), 'granted that,' 'supposing that';  
*quamvīs*, 'although,' 'however' (expressing indefinite  
degree):  
subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).<sup>2</sup>

*Quamvīs dīves sīs, nōn es beātus.*

*However rich you are, you are not happy.*

<sup>1</sup>*Quamquam* is sometimes used at the beginning of a sentence to introduce a MAIN clause. It then means 'and yet.'

<sup>2</sup>See No. 628 for adversative clauses introduced by a relative.

Cum negāre posset, repente cōfessus est.

*Although he could have denied it, he suddenly confessed.*

Ut bonus sit, sapiēns nōn est.

*Granted that he is good, he is not wise.*

- 597 3. *Licet*, 'although,' 'granted that':  
subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537),  
but it is used only in PRIMARY sequence (hence  
only with the PRESENT or PERFECT).

*Licet* veniat, eum nōn vidēbō.

*Although he*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{may} \\ \text{should} \end{array} \right\}$  *come, I shall not see him.*

*Licet* haec dixerim, nōn faciam.

*Although I said this, I shall not do it.*

- 598 4. *Etsi*, *etiāmsi*, *tametsi*, 'even if,' 'although,' follow the  
rules for conditional sentences (Nos. 581-583).

*Etsi* hiemēs mātūrae sunt, in Galliam proficīscī con-  
tendit.

*Although the winters are early, he hastened to set out  
for Gaul.*

*Etiāmsi* dīves essem, beātus nōn essem.

*Even if I were rich, I would not be happy.*

### CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

- 599 The indicative (tense by sense, Nos. 521-523) is regu-  
larly used in comparative clauses.

Sic est ut dixi.

*It is (thus) as I have said.*

*He is such as he was.*

- 605 5. In comparing indefinite NUMBER:  
*as many . . . as*  
*tot . . . quot*  
Tot sunt quot putāvī.  
*There are as many as I thought.*
- 606 6. In comparing indefinite NUMBER OF TIMES:  
*as often . . . as*  
*totiēs . . . quotiēs* (adverbs)  
Totiēs id fēcīt quotiēs voluit.  
*He did it as often as he wished.*
- 607 7. In comparing COMPARATIVE adjectives and adverbs:  
*quō . . . eō*  
*tantō . . . quantō*  
Quō celerius (vēneris), eō melius (erit).  
*The quicker (you come), the better (it will be).*
- 608 8. For *the same as* use *īdem*, *eadem*, *idem* . . . *quī*, *quae*, *quod*. When the verb in the second clause is not expressed, *ac* (*atque*) may be used instead of the relative.  
Idem sentiō quod tū dixistī.  
*I think the same as you said.*  
 Idem sentiō { *ac* / *quod* } tū.  
*I think the same as you (think).*
- 609 Note: *Ac* is used only before consonants; *atque* is used before both vowels and consonants.
- 610 9. With adverbs and adjectives (other than *īdem*; see No. 608) of likeness and difference (*perinde*, *aliter*, *alius*, etc.) use *ac* (*atque*) for *as* and *than*.  
 Accidit perinde ac praevideram.  
*It happened just as I foresaw.*  
Aliter accidit ac putāveram.  
*It happened otherwise than I expected.*

## CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

611 Conditional clauses of comparison are introduced by:

<i>quasi</i>	}	'as if'
<i>ac sī</i>		
<i>velut</i>		
<i>velut sī</i>		
<i>ut sī</i>		'as though'
<i>tamquam</i>		
<i>tamquam sī</i>	}	'than if'
<i>quam sī</i>		

subjunctive;

tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

*Sē gerit quasi rēx* sit.

*He conducts himself* { *as if*  
                                  *as though* } *he* were king.

*Magis eum dilēxī* quam sī frāter meus esset.

*I loved him more* than if *he were my own brother.*

612 **Note:** Sometimes the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is used, even though the main verb is in a primary tense, to indicate that the statement is contrary to fact.

*Mihi loqueris quasi fūr* essem.

*You speak to me as if I were *a thief.**



## SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

- 613** A subordinate clause dependent upon a subjunctive or an infinitive is attracted into the subjunctive when it does not express a fact but forms one complex idea with the governing subjunctive or infinitive.

Bonī rēgis est eōrum quibus praesit ūtilitātī servīre.

*It is the part of a good king to serve the interests of those whom he rules.*

(*Praesit* would otherwise be *praeest*.)

Nēmō avārus adhūc inventus est cui, quod habēret, esset satis.

*No avaricious person has yet been found who was satisfied with what he had.*

(*Habēret* would otherwise be *habēbat*.)

- 614** **Note:** When a subordinate clause forms one idea with a contrary-to-fact condition, it is attracted both into the subjunctive and into the TENSE of the governing verb.

Quid me prohibēret Epicūrēum esse, si probārem quae ille diceret?

*What would prevent me from being an Epicurean, if I approved what he says?*

(*Dīceret* would be *dīcit* if it were not within a contrary-to-fact condition.)

## ADJECTIVE CLAUSES

### RELATIVE CLAUSES

- 615** Relative adjective clauses are introduced by a relative pronoun or adjective referring to a noun or a noun-equivalent (the antecedent) in the main clause; indicative; tense by sense (Nos. 521-523).<sup>1</sup>

Dux quem vīdī Caesar erat.

*The leader whom I saw was Caesar.*

#### Note:

- 616** 1. The relative pronoun follows the general rule of agreement in No. 479. When the relative pronoun refers to a double antecedent it follows the rules in Nos. 475-476.
- 617** 2. The antecedent, especially when it would be *is*, *ea*, *id* or an indefinite pronoun, is frequently omitted.

Quī hoc dīcit errat.

(For "Is quī hoc dīcit errat.")

He *who says this is in error.*

- 618** 3. The relative is never omitted.

Vir quem vīdī Caesar erat.

*The man I saw was Caesar.*

- 619** 4. A relative referring to a whole clause is neuter (often with *id* in apposition to the clause).

Sin tū, (id) quod jam dūdum hortor, exieris . . .

*But if you go forth, a thing which I have long been urging . . .*

<sup>1</sup>See Nos. 624-635 for special types of relative clauses that take the subjunctive. When the *sentence* expresses *repeated* action the rules given in Nos. 542-545 are to be followed.

- 620 5. An **APPOSITIVE** of the antecedent and a **SUPERLATIVE** modifying the antecedent are regularly put in the relative clause.

Jūra, quī mōns altus est, iter impedit.

*The mountain Jura, which is high, blocks the way.*

Centuriōnem quem fortissimum in castrīs habēbat mīsit.

*He sent the bravest centurion he had in the camp.*

- 621 6. The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent.

Hoc cōfirmāmus illō auguriō quō diximus.

*We confirm this by the augury which we mentioned.*

(By the ordinary rule quō would be quod as the object of diximus.)

- 622 7. The relative **quī, quae, quod** is frequently used in Latin to connect a **SENTENCE** or a **MAIN** clause with the preceding sentence or clause. It is then equivalent to **et is, is enim**, or a similar expression and should be so translated.

Quae cum ita sint, abi!

*Since these things are so, depart!*

(Quae is part of the *cum*-clause, but connects the *sentence* with what precedes.)

. . . Quibus omnibus rēbus commōtī hostēs cōpiās trādūxērunt.

. . . *Alarmed by all these facts, the enemy led their troops across.*

(Quibus is part of the *main* clause and connects it with the preceding narration.)

- 623** Relative clauses may also be introduced by relative ADVERBS, *quō*, 'whither,' *ubi*, 'where,' *quā*, 'where,' 'by what way,' *unde*, 'whence,' etc., referring to an adverb or adverbial-equivalent expressed or implied in the main clause; indicative; tense by sense (Nos. 521-523).<sup>1</sup>

Nāvēs unde profectae sunt (erant) revertērunt.

*The ships returned (to the place) whence they had set out.*

Locus ubi castra posuit tūtus erat.

*The place where he pitched camp was safe.*

Ex eīs regiōnibus quō hostēs advēnerant discessit.

*He withdrew from those regions where the enemy had arrived.*

- 624** Relative clauses, whether introduced by relative pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs, may have the force of other kinds of subordinate clauses:

- 625** PURPOSE clauses (No. 546) introduced by a relative: subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

Equitēs mīsit quī oppidum caperent.

*He sent cavalry to take the town.*

*(He sent cavalry who should take the town.)*

Locum ubi castra pōneret ēlēgit.

*He selected a place to pitch camp.*

*(He selected a place where he might pitch camp.)*

<sup>1</sup>However, when the sentence expresses repeated action the rules given in Nos. 542-545 are to be followed.

- 626 **RESULT** clauses (No. 550) introduced by a relative:  
 subjunctive;  
 tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537, 554-555).

Nōn is est quī hoc dīcat.

*He is not such a one that he would say this.*

*(He is not such as would say this.)*

- 627 **CAUSAL** clauses (Nos. 572-573, 578) introduced by a relative:  
 subjunctive;  
 tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

Tibi quī mē adjūverīs, grātiās agō.

*I thank you who (because you) helped me.*

- 628 **ADVERSATIVE** clauses (Nos. 595-598) introduced by a relative:  
 subjunctive;  
 tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

Eum quem antea dēfenderim, tamen amplius nōn dēfendam.

*Him whom I defended before, I shall nevertheless no longer defend.*

*Although I defended him before, I shall no longer defend him.*

- 629 **CONDITIONAL** clauses introduced by a relative follow the rules for conditional sentences (Nos. 581-583).

Quī Deum esse neget, eum hominem esse vix putem.

*I would scarcely consider him a human being who should deny that God exists.*

(Equivalent to the *should-would* type: *I would scarcely consider him a human being if he should deny that God exists.*)

- 630 **LIMITING** relative clauses introduced by *quī, quī modo, quī quidem*:  
subjunctive;  
tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

Omnium oratorum quōs quidem audiverim, acūtissimum iudicō Sertorium.

*Of all the orators, whom at least I have heard, I judge Sertorius to be the most skilled.*

**Note:**

- 631 1. The relative **quod** is used in such clauses to mean *as far as*.

Epicūrus sē ūnus, quod sciam, sapientem profitēri ausus est.

*Epicurus alone, as far as I know, dared to profess himself a wise man.*

- 632 2. **Quātenus, quoad, and quantum**, *as far as*, always take the indicative.

Epicūrus sē ūnus, quoad sciō, sapientem profitēri ausus est.

*Epicurus alone, as far as I know, dared to profess himself a wise man.*

## CHARACTERISTIC CLAUSES

- 633 A relative characteristic clause is used to describe the general CHARACTER of the antecedent; subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537):
- 634 1. Regularly after general, indefinite, negative, and interrogative antecedents.
- Nēmō est quī hoc nesciat.  
*There is no one who does not know this.*
- Quis est quī hoc crēdat?  
*Who is there that believes this?*
- 635 2. Regularly after *idōneus*, 'suitable,' *aptus*, 'fit,' *dignus*, 'worthy,' *indignus*, 'unworthy,' *ūnus*, 'one,' and *sōlus*, 'only.'
- Virtūs tua digna est quae laudētur.  
*Your courage is worthy to be praised.*
- Indignī estis quibus fidem habeāmus.  
*You are not worthy of our confidence.*
- 636 **Note:** It is frequently impossible to distinguish a *characteristic clause* from a relative clause of *result* or *cause*.

## NOUN CLAUSES

### CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *UT*, *UT NŌN*, *NĒ*, *UT NĒ*

- 637 Noun clauses of RESULT introduced by *ut*  
(negative: *ut nōn*) and  
noun clauses of PURPOSE introduced by *ut*  
(negative: *nē*, sometimes *ut nē*)  
take the subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

- 638 A noun clause of result is used as the subject of such impersonal expressions as *accidit*, 'it happens,' *sequitur*, 'it follows,' *reliquum est*, 'it remains,' *ita fit*, 'hence it happens,' *fierī potest*, 'it is possible,' or as the object of *faciō* and its compounds, such as *efficiō*, 'bring about,' 'cause,' *cōnficiō*, 'accomplish,' *perficiō*, 'bring about.'

*Accidit ut nōs nōn vidēret.*

*It happened that he did not see us.*

*Sequitur ut bonus sit.*

*It follows that he is good.*

*Effēcit ut pōns fieret.*

*He brought it about that a bridge was made (built).*

- 639 A noun clause of purpose is used as the object of such verbs as *postulō*, 'demand,' *dēcernō*, 'decree,' *persuādeō*, 'persuade,' *optō*, 'desire,' *quaerō*, 'ask,' *imperō*, 'order,' *hortor*, 'urge,' *moneō*, 'advise,' *rogō*, 'ask,' *impetrō*, 'obtain.'

*Persuāsit ut dē fīnibus exīrent.*

*He persuaded (them) to go forth from their country.*

*Eum monuit nē īret.*

*He advised him not to go.*



## Note:

- 640 1. Some verbs of this class also take the infinitive or the accusative with infinitive, especially, *volō, wish, nōlō, am unwilling, mālō, prefer, cupiō, desire, studeō, am eager, jubeō, command, licet (w. dative of person), it is allowed, cōnor, try, vetō, forbid, patior, allow.*

*Deum vidēre cupimus.*

*We desire to see God.*

- 641 2. *Necesse est, it is necessary, oportet, it behooves, and licet, it is allowed, take the subjunctive WITHOUT UT. (They may also take the infinitive, No. 892.)*

*Deus sit necesse est.*

*It is necessary that God exist.*

## NOUN CLAUSES AFTER VERBS OF FEARING

- 642 Verbs of 'fearing' take a noun clause introduced by *nē, 'lest,' 'that'; nē nōn (or ut), 'that not'; subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).*

*Timeō* *nē* *vincat.*<sup>1</sup>

*I fear* { *lest*  
*that* } *he will conquer.*

*Timeō* { *nē nōn*  
*ut* } *veniat.*

*I fear* *that* *he will* *not* *come.*

<sup>1</sup>The subordinate clause after verbs of fearing contains a disguised wish "I fear that he will conquer" means that the writer has this wish: "May he not conquer" (*Nē vincat*, No. 511). This explains the seeming reversal of meaning in the conjunctions *nē* and *ut* in some clauses of this kind.

**Note:**

- 643 1. **Ut** must not be used for **nē nōn** when the verb of fearing is itself negative or when the negative belongs to a single word and not to the whole clause.
- Nōn vereor nē nōn veniās.  
*I do not fear that you will not come.*  
 (Ut may NOT be used.)
- 644 2. *I fear to do* is **vereor** (**timeō**) with the infinitive as in English.

**NOUN NĒ-CLAUSES**

- 645 Noun clauses introduced by **nē** take the subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537). They occur after such verbs as *caveō*, 'beware,' *vītō*, 'avoid,' *vetō*, 'forbid,' *impediō*, 'hinder,' *resistō*, 'resist,' *obstō*, 'prevent,' *dēterreō*, 'deter,' *recūsō*, 'refuse,' *prohibeō*, 'prevent.'

Vōs prohibēbō nē flūmen trānseātis.  
*I shall prevent you from crossing the river.*

Vōbīs obsistam nē flūmen trānseātis.  
*I shall oppose you lest you cross the river.*

Cavē nē cadās.  
*Beware lest you fall.*

NOUN CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY *QUŌMINUS*

- 646 Noun clauses introduced by *quōminus* take the subjunctive; tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537). They are used after verbs of 'hindering,' preventing,' etc.

Nōn recūsāvit quōminus poenam subīret.  
*He did not refuse to undergo the penalty.*

Quid obstat quōminus Deus sit beātus?  
*What prevents God from being happy?*

Aetās nōn impedit quōminus litterārum studia teneāmus.  
*Age does not hinder our retaining interest in literature.*

## Note:

- 647 1. These verbs may also take *nē* (No. 645) and, when negative, *quīn* (No. 652).
- 648 2. Nōn recūsō may take *nē* (No. 645), *quōminus*, *quīn* (No. 652), or the infinitive.  
 Īre nōn recūsāvit.  
*He did not refuse to go.*
- 649 3. Prohibeō may take *nē* (No. 645), *quōminus*, and, when negative, *quīn* (No. 652); however, oftener it takes the infinitive.  
 Barbarōs intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuērunt.  
*They prevented the barbarians from advancing within their (own) territory.*

NOUN *QUĪN*-CLAUSES

- 650 Clauses introduced by *quīn* may be used **ONLY** when the main verb is **NEGATIVE**.  
They take the subjunctive;  
tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

Noun *quīn*-clauses occur:

- 651 1. Regularly after *nōn dubitō*, 'I do not doubt,' *dubium nōn est*, 'there is no doubt,' *nōn multum abest*, 'there is nothing wanting,' *facere nōn possum*, 'I cannot but,' *ferī nōn potest*, 'it is impossible.'

*Nōn dubitō quīn vērū sit.*  
*I do not doubt that it is true.*

*Ferī nōn potest quīn veniat.*  
*It is impossible that he will not come.*

- 652 2. Often after negative expressions, especially of 'hindering,' 'preventing,' etc.

*Hoc nōn impedit quīn vincāmus.*  
*This will not keep us from conquering.*

Note:

- 653 1. When *quīn* is equivalent to *ut nōn*, it introduces a result clause (No. 552).

*Nihil tam difficile est quīn invēstigārī possit.*  
*Nothing is so difficult that it cannot be discovered.*

- 654 2. When *quīn* is equivalent to *quī nōn* or *quod nōn*, it introduces a characteristic clause (No. 634).

*Nēmō est quīn sciat.*  
*There is no one who does not know.*

- 655 3. *Dubitāre* meaning *to doubt*, when affirmative, takes an indirect question.

Dubitō num vērum sit.  
*I doubt whether it is true.*

- 656 4. *Dubitāre* meaning *to hesitate* takes the infinitive.

Pugnāre nōn dubitāvit.  
*He did not hesitate to fight.*

## NOUN QUOD-CLAUSES

- 657 *Quod*, 'the fact that' (explanatory) takes the indicative; tense by sense (Nos. 521-523).

These clauses may follow:

- 658 1. Demonstratives, expressed or implied, in the main clause.

Eō (or *hāc rē, eā rē, hōc*) Caesar aliis praestābat quod rēs maximās et gessit et scripsit.  
*In this Caesar surpassed others, that he both achieved great deeds and recorded them.*

Quod vivō, tuum est.  
*That I live, this I owe to you (lit.: is yours).*

- 659 2. Expressions like *bene* (*male, commodē, opportūnē*) *accidit* (*fit, ēvēnit*).

Bene accidit quod lūna plēna erat.  
*It was fortunate that the moon was full.*

**Note:** For *quod* after verbs of emotion see No. 579.

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS

**660** **DEFINITION:** An INDIRECT question is one that depends on a verb of *saying, asking, knowing, etc.* As a noun clause it may be used as SUBJECT, OBJECT, APPOSITIVE, or PREDICATE NOUN. It is introduced by the same interrogative particles, adverbs, pronouns, and adjectives as direct questions.

**661** **Note:** Nōne is NEVER used except with QUAERŌ.  
 Num and -ne mean *whether (if)*.  
 Necne is used for annōn, or not, in a double indirect question.  
 Quī (in this form, the nominative masculine singular *only*) is sometimes used for quis.

**662** INDIRECT QUESTIONS

are put in the subjunctive;  
 tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

Caesar rogat num milītēs pugnent.

*Caesar asks whether the soldiers are fighting.*

Caesar rogat num milītēs pugnāverint.

*Caesar asks whether the soldiers fought.*

Caesar rogāvit num milītēs pugnārent.

*Caesar asked whether the soldiers were fighting.*

Caesar rogāvit num milītēs pugnāvissent.

*Caesar asked whether the soldiers had fought.*

Rogāvit quid esset factūrus.

*He asked what he was going to do.*

Nesciit quanta esset insulae magnitūdō.

*He did not know how large the island was.*

Sciō ubi fuerīs.

*I know where you were.*

Quaesivī cognōsceretne signum.

*I asked whether he recognized the seal.*

Rogō utrum hoc dixerīs necne.

*I ask whether you said this or not.*

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE

- 663**     **DEFINITION:** Indirect discourse is speech reported in dependence on a verb of *saying, hearing, or the like.*

**Direct:**     Pācem faciam.

*I shall make peace.*

“Pācem,” inquit, “faciam.”

*He said, “I shall make peace.”*

**Indirect:**     Dixit sē pācem factūrum esse.

*He said he would make peace.*

#### In indirect discourse:

- 664**     1. Main declarative clauses are put in the accusative and the infinitive; tense by relation (Nos. 885-887).

Dixit sē ventūrum esse.

*He said that he would come.*

Crēdō eum ventūrum esse.

*I believe that he will come.*

- 665 2. Subordinate clauses,  
questions,  
commands (negative *nē*),  
are put in the subjunctive;  
tense by sequence (Nos. 524-537).

Rēx lēgātīs respondit: Agrōs quōs occupāvisset<sup>1</sup> suōs esse; nē in eōs Caesar exercitum dūceret.<sup>2</sup> Cūr Caesar ad sē vēnisset?<sup>3</sup> In Prōvinciam reverterētur.<sup>4</sup>

*The king answered the envoys: that the fields which he had occupied were his. Let Caesar not lead an army into them. Why had Caesar come to him? Let him return into the Province.*

**Explanation:**

1. Quōs occupāvisset is a *subordinate clause* in indirect discourse; therefore, the *subjunctive* is used.
2. Nē . . . dūceret is a *negative command* in indirect discourse; therefore, *nē with the subjunctive* is used.
3. Cūr . . . vēnisset is a *question* in indirect discourse; therefore, the *subjunctive* is used.
4. In . . . reverterētur is a *command* in indirect discourse; therefore, the *subjunctive* is used.

**Note:**

- 666 1. Rhetorical questions in indirect discourse are put into the accusative with the infinitive.

Caesar mīlitibus dīxit lēgātum ex aciē fūgisse; quid turpius esse?

*Caesar said to the soldiers that the lieutenant had fled from the battle line; what was more shameful?*



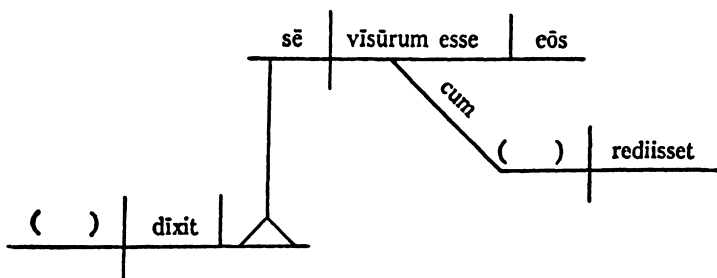
667

2. In indirect discourse the tense of the main verb of *saying, etc.* determines whether the tenses of the subjunctives in the indirect discourse are to be *primary* or *secondary*. But the particular tense of these subjunctives, that is, whether they are to be put in the *present* or *perfect* in primary sequence, and whether they are to be put in the *imperfect* or *pluperfect* in secondary sequence, depends upon their relation to the verb to which these subjunctives are directly subordinated.

**Example and Explanation:**

Dīxit sē, cum rediisset, eōs vīsūrum esse.

*He said that he would see them when he returned.*



*Dīxit* is the verb of saying which governs the entire indirect discourse. Since then it is a *secondary* tense, the subjunctive (*rediisset*) in the indirect discourse must be a *secondary* tense. However, as the diagram shows, *rediisset* is *directly subordinated* to the infinitive *vīsūrum esse*. Now in relation to this verb, *rediisset* expresses an action *completed before* the action of *vīsūrum esse*. (The act of *returning* must be *completed before* the act of *seeing*). Therefore *rediisset* is put in the *pluperfect* and not in the imperfect.

- 668 3. In passing from direct to indirect discourse, pronouns and adverbs of time will change according to sense.

**Direct:** Hodiē vēnī.  
*I came today.*

**Indirect:** (Reported by a third person some days later.)  
Dixit sē illō diē vēnisse.  
*He said he had come on that day.*

4. Conditional sentences :

- 669 a. The sī-clause is treated like any subordinate clause except that an imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is never changed to a primary tense.

Sciō vōs, sī possētis, mē adjūtūrōs fuisse.  
*I know that, if you were able, you would have helped me.*

- b. The main clause goes into the infinitive, but :

- 670 1. A present subjunctive becomes a future infinitive.

Dicō tē, sī hoc dicās, errātūrum esse.  
*I say that you would be in error if you should say this.*

- 671 2. An imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive becomes a future infinitive in -ūrus fuisse.

Sciō vōs, sī potuissētis, mē adjūtūrōs fuisse.  
*I know that, if you had been able, you would have helped me.*

**Note:**

- 672 1. In the passive the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive may change to futūrum fuisse ut with the imperfect subjunctive.

Sciō, sī hoc fēcissētis, futūrum fuisse ut vituperārēmini.  
*I know that, if you had done this, you would have been blamed.*

- 673 2. *Posse, debere, oportere* are used as future infinitives: *potuisse, debuisse, oportuisse* are used as the *-urus fuisse* forms.

- 674 c. When the pluperfect subjunctive active in the main clause of a contrary-to-fact condition becomes dependent (*v. g.*, in an indirect question, an *ut-* or *quin-* clause), it is changed to the form *-urus fuerim* if the verb has a future participle.

*Nōn dubitō quin, sī hoc dixissēs, errātūrus fueris.*

*I do not doubt that you would have erred if you had said this.*

- 675 5. **Implied Indirect Discourse:** Indirect discourse is often used when a verb of *saying*, etc., is merely implied in the context.

*Rēgulus reddī captīvōs negāvit esse ūtile; illōs enim adulēscētēs esse, sē jam cōfectum senectūte.*

*Regulus said that it would be useless to return the captives; for (he said) they were young men, he himself was already worn out with age.*

(The context implies that the words of Regulus are being reported.)

- 676 6. In indirect discourse subordinate clauses which are *explanatory* or *circumlocutions* are oftener put in the **INDICATIVE**.

*Quis potest esse tam mente captus quī neget haec omnia quae vidēmus deōrum immortalium potestāte administrārī?*

*Who can be so stupid as to deny that all these things which we see are administered by the power of the immortal gods?*

(*Haec omnia quae vidēmus* is merely a circumlocution for *all this visible world*.)

## THE CASES

### THE NOMINATIVE

- 677**    The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

*Marīa ōrat.*

*Mary prays.*

### THE VOCATIVE

- 678**    The person addressed is put in the vocative.

*Pugnāte fortiter, mīlitēs!*

*Fight bravely, soldiers!*

*Tū, Domine, adjuvābis mē.*

*Thou, O Lord, wilt help me.*

- 679**    **Note:** In poetry and elevated prose the nominative may be used for the vocative or as an appositive to a vocative.

*Audī tū, populus Albānus!*

*Hear you, Alban nation!*

## THE GENITIVE AS AN ADJECTIVE-EQUIVALENT

## THE POSSESSIVE GENITIVE

- 680 The genitive, as attributive or predicative, is used to express the POSSESSOR.

Cōpiaē hostium veniunt (attributive).

*The enemy's troops are coming.*

Filius rēgis occīsus est (attributive).

*The king's son was killed.*

*(The son of the king was killed.)*

Gallia Populī Rōmānī nōn Ariovistī est (predicative).

*Gaul belongs to the Roman people not to Ariovistus.*

*(Gaul is the Roman People's, not Ariovistus'.)*

## THE EXPLANATORY GENITIVE

- 681 The genitive is used to EXPLAIN the noun it modifies.

The genitive may explain a noun in many ways. It may explain what an object is *made of*, *consists in*, *is connected with*, or it may simply give or limit the meaning of a noun. The exact connection and the best English translation will depend on the context.

Vōx vērītātis

*The word "truth"*

Perīculum mortis

*Danger of death*

Injūria lēgātōrum retentōrum

*The wrong of (consisting in) detaining the envoys*

Acervus frūmentī

*A heap of grain (made of grain)*

Agmen elephantōrum  
*A column of (made up of) elephants*

Signum proelii committendi  
*The signal for engaging in battle*

Difficultātēs bellī  
*The difficulties of (connected with) the war*

- 682 **Note:** Explanatory names with cities, mountains, rivers, etc., are generally not put in the *genitive* but in *apposition*.

Urbs Rōma  
*The city of Rome*

Flūmen Arar  
*The river Saône*

### THE SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE

- 683 **With nouns implying an ACTION**  
 the **genitive** is used to express  
 the **SOURCE** or **DOER** of that action.

Adventus Caesaris  
*The arrival of Caesar*  
*(i. e., Caesar arrived.)*

Injūriæ Gallōrum  
*The wrongs of the Gauls*  
*(i. e., The Gauls committed the wrongs.)*

## THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

- 684 With nouns implying an ACTION  
the genitive is used to express  
the OBJECT OF THAT ACTION.

Timor Deī

*Fear of God*

(i. e., We fear God.)

Caedēs principum

*The slaughter of the chiefs*

(i. e., Someone slaughtered the chiefs.)

- 685 **Note:** Notice that many English prepositional phrases are translated by this genitive: *a remedy for anger, remedium irae; a belief in God, opīniō Deī, etc.*

## THE PARTITIVE GENITIVE

- 686 The genitive is used to express the WHOLE  
of which the noun it modifies expresses a part.

Magna pars cōpiārum

*A large part of the troops*

Prīmus omnium militum

*First of all the soldiers*

**Note:**

1. The partitive genitive is used with:

- 687 a. nouns, neuter adjectives, neuter pronouns, of QUANTITY.

Plūs frūmentī

*More (of) grain*

Sī quid est in mē ingeniī

*If there is any native talent in me*

- 688      b. comparatives and superlatives.  
            Hōrum omnium fortissimī  
            *The bravest of all these*
- 689      c. numerals and pronouns like nūllus, *no (one)*, nēmō, *no one*, uter, *which* (of two), etc.  
            Ūnus eōrum  
            *One of them*  
            Nēmō eōrum  
            *No one of them*
- 690      d. the adverbs, satis, *enough*, nimis, *too much*, parum, *too little*, partim, *part of*, when used as nouns.  
            Satis frūmentī  
            *Enough (of) grain*
- 691      e. (occasionally) adverbs of place like ubi, *where*, quō, *whither*, etc.  
            Ubi terrārum sumus?  
            *Where on earth are we?*
- 692      2. With numerals, comparatives, and superlatives, ex or dē, less often inter, may be used to emphasize the relation of whole and part.  
            Ūnus ex multis  
            *One of many*
- 693      3. Only adjectives with genitives in -ī may be used as nouns in the partitive genitive.  
            Nihil novī (*genitive*)  
            *Nothing new*  
            but:  
            Nihil trīste (*trīste agrees with nihil*)  
            *Nothing sad*



- 694 4. English often uses an *of*-phrase where there is no PART expressed. The Latin does not use the genitive in such cases but makes the words agree.

*All of us* (*All* is not a PART of *us*)

Omnēs nōs (lit.: *we all*)

*All of these* (*All* is not a PART)

Hī omnēs (lit.: *these all*)

### THE DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE

- 695 The genitive, ALWAYS accompanied by an adjective, may be used to DESCRIBE a noun or a noun-equivalent.

Homō magnae virtūtis

*A man of great courage*

Fossa vīgintī pedum

*A twenty-foot ditch* (lit.: *a ditch of twenty feet*)

#### Note:

1. In descriptive phrases the genitive or ablative (No. 762) may often be used at will, but:
- 696 a. Phrases of size, number, weight, time, space, worth, rank, position, value, and kind (*modus, sort, manner* and *genus, kind*) are always in the genitive.
- Fossa vīgintī pedum  
*A twenty-foot ditch*
- Situs oppidī erat hūjus modī.  
*The position of the town was of this sort.*

- 697      b. Phrases descriptive of parts of the body or external appearances are always in the ABLATIVE.

Puella caeruleis oculis

*A blue-eyed girl*

- 698      c. Transient qualities or states are always in the ABLATIVE.

Grātō animō sum.

*I am grateful.*

- 699      2. The ablative and genitive of description supply in Latin for many adjectives which that language does not possess. Thus we say: *a blue-eyed girl*. But the Romans had no adjective for *blue-eyed*; hence, they said: **puella caeruleis oculis**, *a girl with blue eyes*.

## THE GENITIVE AS AN ADVERB-EQUIVALENT

## THE GENITIVE OF INDEFINITE VALUE

- 700** The genitive neuter singular of adjectives of quantity is used with verbs of 'estimating,' 'valuing,' and the like to express INDEFINITE value.

Est tantī!

*It is worth it! (It is of such a value.)*

Permagnī eum aestimō.

*I value him very highly.*

Note:

- 701** 1. The common genitives in this case are:
- |          |   |
|----------|---|
| magnī    | of great value, highly                    |
| permagnī | of very great value, very highly          |
| plūris   | of higher value, more (highly)            |
| plūrimī  | } of highest value, very highly (highest) |
| maximī   |   |
| parvī    | of small value, very little               |
| minōris  | of less value, less highly                |
| minimī   | of smallest value, very little            |
| tantī    | of such a value, so much                  |
| quantī   | of what value, how highly                 |

- 702** 2. The common verbs in this case are:

aestimō, 1, tr.	value, estimate
faciō, 3, tr.	regard
habeō, 2, tr.	hold
dūcō, 3, tr.	consider
putō, 1, tr.	think
sum, intr.	am

- 703 3. The genitives *nihilī* (*nothing*), *flocē* (*a straw*), and *assis* (*a cent*), and a few similar words may also be used in this construction, the last two generally after a negative.
- Nōn habeo eum assis.  
*I don't consider him worth a cent.*
- 704 4. Adverbs are more rarely used with these verbs than the genitive.
- Eum parvè aestimō.  
*I value him little.*
- 705 5. The genitives *tantī*, *quantī*, *plūris*, *minōris*, are used as genitives of price with verbs of *buying*, *selling*, *costing*, and the like instead of the ablative of price (No. 788). Otherwise the ablative of price is used with such verbs.
- Quantī stat?  
*How much does it cost?*

### THE GENITIVE WITH VERBS

- 706 After *meminisse* and *oblivisci*:  
persons are put in the genitive;  
things in the accusative or genitive  
(but neuter pronouns or adjectives are always in the accusative).
- Mementō meī.  
*Remember me.*
- Obliviscere incendiōrum!  
*Forget burnings!*
- Hoc memini.  
*I remember this.*

**Note:**

- 707 1. **Meminisse**, however, takes the accusative of persons when it means not merely *remember*, but *still remember one known personally*.

Caesarem meminit.  
*He remembers Caesar.*

- 708 2. **Recordor**, *I, tr., recall*, takes *dē* and the ablative of PERSONS but the accusative, rarely *dē* with the ablative, of THINGS.

Haec recordor.  
*I recall these things.*  
Dē amicis recordātus sum.  
*I recalled (the thought of) my friends.*

- 709 With *interest* and *refert*.<sup>1</sup>  
the person interested is put in the genitive.

Hoc Caesaris interest.  
*This is of interest to Caesar.*

**Note:**

- 710 1. When the person is expressed by a pronoun the ABLATIVE FEMININE SINGULAR of the POSSESSIVE adjective is used instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun. Thus: *meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā*, are used instead of *meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī*.

Meā refert. (not: Meī refert.)  
*It concerns me.*

<sup>1</sup>Both these verbs are used IMPERSONALLY (No. 331). *Interest* means 'it interests,' 'it is important,' 'it makes a difference.' *Refert* means 'it concerns,' 'it matters,' 'it profits.'

- 711 2. The thing in question may be expressed by a neuter pronoun, an infinitive, an accusative with the infinitive, an indirect question, or a noun clause of purpose.

Omnium interest valēre.

*Good health is the concern of everyone.*

- 712 3. The purpose with reference to which the thing is of interest or value goes into the accusative with **ad**.

Ad discendum magni interest.

*It is of great importance for learning.*

- 713 4. The degree of value or interest is expressed by an adverb, an adverbial neuter, or by the indefinite genitive of value.

Ad discendum magni (multum) interest.

*It is of great importance for learning.*

- 714 With *piget*, *pudet*, *paenitet*, *taedet*, *miseret*:  
the PERSON feeling the emotion is put in the ACCU-  
SATIVE;  
the CAUSE OF THE EMOTION in the GENITIVE.

Taedet mē vītae.

*I am weary of life.*

Mē tuī pudet.

*I am ashamed of you.*

- 715 Note: *piget*, *pigēre*, *piguit*, 2, *tr.*, it annoys  
*paenitet*, *paenitēre*, *paenituit*, 2, *tr.*, it repents  
*miseret*, *miserēre*, *miseritum est*, 2, *tr.*, it grieves  
*pudet*, *pudēre*, *puduit*, 2, *tr.*, it shames  
*taedet*, *taedēre*, *taeduit* (*taesum est*), 2, *tr.*, it wearies

- 716 All these verbs are used *impersonally*. However, they may have an *infinitive* or a neuter pronoun (singular or plural) as a subject.
- Haec tē pudent.  
*These things shame you.*

## THE GENITIVE OF THE CHARGE

- 717 The genitive is used with verbs of 'accusing,' 'condemning,' and 'acquitting' to express the CHARGE.

Fūrti mē accūsāt.  
*He accuses me of theft.*

Inertiae nēquitiaequē mē condemnō.  
*I condemn myself for criminal negligence.*

- 718 **Note:** *Dē* and *propter* are sometimes used. Note the phrases *dē vī*, *of assault*, and *inter sicāriōs*, *of murder* (lit.: *among murders*).

## OTHER VERBS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE

- 719 1. *Admoneō*, *admonēre*, *admonuī*, *admonitus*, 2, tr., 'warn,' 'advise'; *commoneō*, etc., 'remind'; *commonefaciō*, *commonefacere*, *commonefēcī*, *commonefactus*, 3, tr., 'remind,' 'admonish,' besides taking an accusative of the PERSON sometimes take a genitive of the THING (but always the accusative of neuter nouns and adjectives). They rarely take *dē* with the ablative of the thing.

Hūjus rei tē commonefaciō.  
*I admonish you of this thing.*

Tē hoc moneō.  
*I warn you of this.*

- 720 2. Verbs meaning 'want,' 'need,' and 'fill with' take either the genitive or the ablative.

Armōrum indigēmus.

*We need arms.*

Mūrum hominibus complēvit.

*He filled the wall with men.*

- 721 3. *Potior, potīrī, potītus sum*, 4, intr., 'gain possession of,' regularly takes the ablative but occasionally takes the genitive (always the genitive in the phrase *rērum potīrī*, 'to get control of affairs').

Castrīs potītus est.

*He gained possession of the camp.*

### GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

- 722 Adjectives meaning 'full,' 'possessing,' 'knowing,' 'desiring,' etc., and their contraries often take the genitive.

Hūjus reī perītus

*Skilled in this matter*

Bellum est periculōrum plēnum.

*War is full of dangers.*

Caesar glōriae cupidus erat.

*Caesar was desirous of glory.*

*Caesar was eager for glory.*



**Note:**

- 723** 1. Common adjectives with the genitive are:  
*plēnus*, a, um, *full* (occasionally also with the ablative); *inānis*, e, *empty of*; *indigēns*, *indigentis*, *lacking*; *particeps*, *sharing in*; *proprius*, a, um, *proper to*; *commūnis*, e, *common to*; *perītus*, a, um, *skilled in*; *memor*, *mindful of*; *imperītus*, a, um, *unskilled in*; *cupidus*, a, um, *eager for*; *studiōsus*, a, um, *eager for, zealous for*. *Similis*, e, *like*, generally takes the dative, but the genitive is more common with persons and stresses the exactness of the likeness.
- 724** 2. Present participles expressing not a single action but an habitual quality or a continuous state may govern the genitive.
- Amāns patriae*  
*A lover of his country (i. e., a patriot)*

## THE DATIVE

## THE DATIVE OF POSSESSION

- 725 The dative is used with *esse*  
to express the possessor.

Pater mihi est.

*I have a father (a father is to me).*

Domus tibi est.

*You have a house (a house is to you).*

## THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE

- 726 The dative is used to express the person  
(or, more rarely, the thing)  
TO WHOM a statement refers or is of interest,  
or FOR WHOM it is true.

Nōn nōbīs sōlīs sed et patriae nātī sumus.

*We are born, not for ourselves alone, but also for our  
country.*

Ille mihi semper deus erit.

*He will always be a god to me.*

Hoc est oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus ab Ēpīrō.

*This is the first town of Thessaly to those coming from  
Epirus.*

**Note:**

- 727 1. This dative often expresses personal interest or emotion (*ethical dative*). Especially are the datives *mihi*, *tibi*, *vōbīs*, *nōbīs* so used.

Quid mihi Celsus agit?  
*And how is my Celsus doing?*

- 728 2. In the expression *nōmen est*, the name is sometimes attracted into the dative but more often it is in the nominative in apposition with *nōmen*.

Mihi Caesarī nōmen est.  
 Mihi Caesar nōmen est.  
*My name is Caesar.*

## THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE

- 729 The dative of an abstract noun is often used to express the purpose or tendency of an action, especially after verbs of 'motion,' *esse*, and *relinquō*.

Labiēnum subsidiō mittit.  
*He sends Labienus to help.*

Decem cohortēs auxiliō mīsit.  
*He sent ten cohorts to help (for a help).*

Duās legiōnēs praesidiō reliquit.  
*He left two legions behind as a garrison.*

- 730 **Note:**

1. The dative of purpose is never plural.
2. It is never modified by a genitive.
3. It is never modified by any adjective except one of quantity.

## THE DOUBLE DATIVE

- 731**    The dative of purpose is generally accompanied by a dative of reference, especially after *esse*.

Hoc mihi magnō dolōrī est.  
*This is a great sorrow to me.*

Suis labōrantibus Labiēnum subsidiō mittit.  
*He sends Labienus to help his struggling men (as a help to his struggling men).*

## DATIVE OF AGENCY

The dative is used to express the agent:

- 732**    1. With the gerundive and *esse* (except when there is another dative in the same clause, No. 882).

Rōmānī nōbīs vincendī sunt.  
*The Romans must be conquered by us.*

Caesar sibi nōn exspectandum esse putāvit.  
*Caesar thought that he ought not to wait.*

- 733**    2. More rarely with the perfect passive participle, alone or in the compound tenses.

Illud mihi intellectum est.  
*I understood that.*  
 (Lit.: *That was understood by me.*)

- 734**    3. Rarely with other passive forms.

Neque cernitur ūllī.  
*And is not seen by anyone.*

## THE DATIVE OF LIMIT OF MOTION

- 735 The dative is used in poetry to express the 'place to' or 'towards which.'

It clāmor caelō.

*A shout goes up to the sky.*

## THE DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT

- 736 DEFINITION: The INDIRECT OBJECT states the person (rarely the thing) to whom something is said, given, handed over, etc.

- 737 The indirect object is put in the dative.

Gallīs gladiōs dedit.

*He gave swords to the Gauls.*

*He gave the Gauls swords.*

## THE DATIVE AFTER COMPOUND VERBS

- 738 Many verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *cum*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, *super* take a dative as well as an accusative object.

Mūnitiōnī Labiēnum praefēcit.

*He put Labienus in charge of the fortifications.*

## THE DATIVE AFTER INTRANSITIVE VERBS

- 739 Many intransitive verbs take a sole object in the dative.

Ventus nāvibus nocuit.

*The wind injured the ships.*

## Note:

- 740 1. Some of the common verbs which take this construction are:

*prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, intr. (dat.), profit, benefit*

*noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, 2, intr. (dat.), injure, harm*

*studeō, studēre, studuī, 2, intr. (dat.), be eager for, devote energy to*

*cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, 3, intr. (dat.), yield*

*resistō, resistere, restitī, 3, intr. (dat.), resist*

*parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus, 3, intr. (dat.), spare*

*placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum, 2, intr. (dat.), please*

*displiceō, displicēre, displicuī, displicitum, 2, intr. (dat.), displease*

*imperō, 1, intr. (dat.), order, enjoin*

*persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, 2, intr. (dat.), persuade*

*serviō, 4, intr. (dat.), serve*

- 741 2. Intransitive verbs are used only IMPERSONALLY in the passive (No. 332). The agent is in the ablative after *ab* (*ā*); the dative remains.

**Active:** *Caesar persuades me.*

*Caesar mihi persuādet.*

**Passive:** *I am persuaded by Caesar.*

*Mihi ā Caesare persuādētur.*

(Lit.: *It is persuaded to me by Caesar.*)

## DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

The dative is used with many adjectives:

- 742 1. Meaning 'friendly,' 'unfriendly,' 'similar,' 'dissimilar,'  
'equal,' 'unequal,' 'near,' 'related to,' and the like.

Mihi amicus est.

*He is friendly to me.*

Proximī sunt Germānīs.

*They are next to the Germans.*

- 743 2. Meaning 'suitable,' 'adapted,' 'fit.'

Castrīs idōneus locus

*A place suitable for a camp*

## DATIVE WITH VERBS OF SEPARATION

- 744 Some verbs of 'taking away,'  
especially those compounded with  
*ab* (*ā*), *dē*, and *ex* (*ē*),  
take a dative of the person.

Hunc mihi timōrem ēripe.

*Take this fear from me.*

## THE ACCUSATIVE AS PART OF THE PREDICATE

## THE ACCUSATIVE AS OBJECT

- 745 The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.

Caesar fortūnam laudāvit.

*Caesar praised fortune.*

Ūnam partem Belgae incolunt.

*The Belgians inhabit one part.*

## THE DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE

- 746 Verbs of 'calling,' 'electing,' 'considering as,' 'showing oneself,'  
take an accusative object  
and a predicate accusative (noun or adjective).

Tē imperātōrem appellō.

*I call you emperor.*

Mē sevērūm praebeō.

*I show myself unrelenting.*

- 747 Note: In the passive:

1. the accusative object becomes the *subject*;
2. the predicate accusative becomes the *predicate nominative*.

Active: Christum rēgem appellāmus.

*We call Christ king.*

Passive: Christus ā nōbīs rēx appellātur.

*Christ is called king by us.*



- 748 *Trānsportāre, trādūcere, trājicere*, and the like  
take two accusatives:  
one of the thing transported; the other of the place.

Caesar exercitum flūmen trādūxit.  
*Caesar led his army across the river.*

**Note:**

- 749 1. In the passive:  
the thing transported becomes the *subject*;  
the other accusative *remains*.  
Exercitus ā Caesare flūmen trāductus est.  
*The army was led across the river by Caesar.*
- 750 2. The place may also be expressed by *trāns* and the accusative.  
Helvētīi cōpiās suās trāns flūmen trādūxerant.  
*The Helvetians had led their troops across the river (active).*  
Cōpiae trāns flūmen ab Helvētiīs erant trāductae.  
*The troops had been transported across the river by the Helvetians (passive).*

- 751 Verbs of 'teaching,' 'requesting,' 'demanding,' 'asking,'  
'inquiring,' and *cēlō*, 'conceal,'  
take two accusatives:  
one of the PERSON, the other of the THING.

Christus nōs viam salūtis docet.  
*Christ teaches us the way of salvation.*

Rem Caesarem cēlāvit.  
*He concealed the affair from Caesar.*

Helvētiōs frūmentum flāgitāvit.  
*He demanded grain from the Helvetians.*

**Note:**

- 752 1. **Quaerō, inquire**, always, and other verbs of *asking* and *inquiring* generally, take **ex** (ē) or **ab** (ā) with the ablative of the PERSON. Preferred usage must be learned from the dictionary. When the THING is expressed by a neuter pronoun, the double accusative is common.

Ex tē causam bellī quaerō.  
*I ask you the cause of the war.*  
 Hoc tē rogō.  
*I ask this of you.*

- 753 2. In the PASSIVE:  
 a. the *person* becomes the *subject*;  
 b. the *thing* remains *accusative*.

**Active:** Mē linguam Latinam docuit.  
*He taught me Latin.*

**Passive:** Linguam Latinam doctus sum.  
*I have been taught Latin.*

- 754 3. Many of these verbs are rare in the passive. Occasionally the THING becomes the subject.

Frumentum ab eīs flāgitābātur.  
*Grain was being demanded from them.*

### ACCUSATIVE OF NEUTER PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

An accusative of a neuter pronoun or adjective (especially of NUMBER or QUANTITY) is often used:

- 755 1. As an object of many INTRANSITIVE DATIVE verbs.

Hoc Caesarī persuāsit. (Hoc is accusative.)  
*He persuaded Caesar of this.*

**756 2. As an object of many INTRANSITIVE verbs.**

Multa peccat.

*He makes many mistakes.*

(Lit.: *He errs many things.*)

Hoc gaudeō. (Hoc is accusative.)

*I rejoice at this.*

**757 3. As a SECOND object of TRANSITIVE verbs.**

Illud tē moneō.

*I warn you of that.*

**THE COGNATE ACCUSATIVE****758 An accusative of a word of the same stem or meaning as the verb, generally accompanied by an adjective or pronoun, may be used as the object even of an otherwise intransitive verb.**

Vitam jūcundam vivere

*To live a happy life*

Ācerrimam pugnam pugnāre

*To fight a bitter battle*

## THE ACCUSATIVE AS AN ADVERB-EQUIVALENT

## THE ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS

- 759 The accusative is used in exclamations.

*Mē miserum!*

*Wretch that I am! (Wretched me!)*

## THE ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION

- 760 In poetry the accusative is used to express the part affected.

*Lacrimīs oculōs suffūsa nitentēs*

*With her shining eyes filled with tears*

*(Lit.: Filled with tears as to her shining eyes)*

## THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT OF SPACE AND TIME

- 761 The accusative is used to express the extent of space or time (answering the questions: How far? How long?).

*Duās hōrās pugnāvērunt.*

*They fought { two hours.*  
*{ for two hours.*

*Duo milia passuum iter fēcērunt.*

*They marched two miles.*

*Flūmen decem pedēs aberat.*

*The river was ten feet away.*

## THE ABLATIVE AS AN ADJECTIVE-EQUIVALENT

## THE ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

- 762 The ablative, always accompanied by an adjective, may be used, attributively or predicatively, to describe a noun or noun-equivalent.

Caesar erat vir summō ingeniō.

*Caesar was a man of the highest genius.*

Puer caeruleis oculis

*A blue-eyed boy*

*A boy with blue eyes*

Vir magnō corpore

*A man with a large body*

- 763 **Note:** For the distinction between the ablative of description and the genitive of description see Nos. 696-699.

## THE ABLATIVE AS AN ADVERB-EQUIVALENT

## THE ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT

- 764 *Ā* or *ab* with the ablative is used to express the LIVING AGENT.

Deus ā Christiānis laudātur.

*God is praised by Christians.*

Urbs ā duce oppugnāta est.

*The city was attacked by the leader.*

Hostēs ab eis pulsī sunt.

*The enemy were routed by them.*

## THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS

- 765** The ablative without a preposition is used to express the non-living agent, the means, or the instrument.

Rōmānī tēlis hiberna dēfendērunt.

*The Romans defended the winter quarters with darts.*

Castra fossā mūnīvērunt.

*They fortified the camp { with  
by means of } a ditch.*

Montibus continēbantur.

*They were held in by mountains.*

Tēlis terrentur.

*They are being terrified by darts.*

## THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

- 766** With verbs and adjectives of 'separating,' 'freeing,' 'depriving,' and the like:

1. With things: use the ablative without a preposition.
2. With persons: use the ablative with *dē*, *ex*, or *ab*.

Metū liber sum.

*I am free from fear.*

Ā tyrannīs patriam liberāvī.

*I freed my country from tyrants.*

## Note:

- 767** 1. Many verbs, however, require a preposition with both persons and things. Such verbs must be learned individually from the vocabularies.

- 768 2. With *nāscor*, *nāscī*, *nātus sum*, 3, *intr.*, *am born*, and *orior*, *orīrī*, *ortus sum*, 4, *intr.*, *arise*, *spring from*, the ablative without a preposition is generally used to express *immediate source*, but *ab* (*ā*) or *ex* (*ē*) with the ablative to express *remote source*.

Nāte deā!

*Goddess-born!* (immediate source).

Ā Germānīs ortī sunt.

*They are descended from the Germans* (remote source).

### THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER

- 769 *Cum* with the ablative is used to express manner and attendant circumstances. When the noun is modified by an adjective *cum* may be omitted.

Militēs cum virtūte pugnāvērunt.

*The soldiers fought with courage.*

Militēs magnā (cum) virtūte pugnāvērunt.

*The soldiers fought with great courage.*

### THE ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

- 770 The ablative without a preposition is used to express respect (answering: In what? In respect to what?).

Lēgibus inter sē differunt.

*They differ among themselves in laws.*

Aliōs virtūte superant.

*They surpass others* { *in courage.*  
*in respect to courage.*  
*with regard to courage.*

## THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

- 771 The ablative is used to express the degree of difference with comparatives and comparative expressions.

Multō melior est.

He is much better (lit.: by much).

## THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

- 772 *Cum* with the ablative is used to express accompaniment or association.

Lēgātus cum Caesare vēnit.

The envoy came  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in company with} \\ \text{together with} \\ \text{with} \end{array} \right\} \text{Caesar.}$

Ūnā cum eīs proficiscuntur.

They set out with them.

Germānī sēsē cum hīs conjūnxērunt.

The Germans united themselves with these.

(i. e., the Germans joined these.)

- 773 **Note:** In military expressions *cum* is sometimes omitted when the noun is modified by an adjective other than a numeral.

Omnibus cōpiīs subsequitur.

He follows with all his forces.

He follows in full force.

- 774 This is especially the case when, e. g., an army is considered rather as the means.

Exercitū urbem cēpit.

He took the city with his army.

(He took the city by means of his army.)



## THE ABLATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

- 775 The ablative is used with adjectives meaning 'worthy of,' 'full of,' 'relying on,' and the like.

Vir laude dignus  
*A man worthy of praise*

- 776 **Note:** Such adjectives are especially *dignus, a, um, worthy of*; *indignus, a, um, unworthy of*; *plēnus, a, um, full of* (which generally takes the genitive, see No. 722); *frētus, a, um, relying on*; *contentus, a, um, contented with*, etc.

## THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

- 777 When *quam*, 'than,' would be followed by the nominative or the accusative, the ablative may be substituted for *quam* and the nominative or accusative.

Patria mihi vītā cārīor est (*i. e., quam vīta*).  
*My country is dearer to me than life.*

**Note:**

- 778 1. The ablative is always used instead of *quam* and the nominative or accusative of the RELATIVE pronoun.

Patria, quā nihil mihi cārīus est, mēcum loquitur.  
*My country, than which nothing is dearer to me, speaks with me.*

- 779 2. The ablative is never used when it would be ambiguous.

*I love Cicero more than Brutus (does).*  
 Cicerōnem plūs amō quam Brūtus.  
 (Brūtō would substitute for either **Brūtus** or **Brūtum**; therefore it is not used.)

- 780 3. The ablative is regular in negative and interrogative sentences.

Nihil eō dulcius.

*Nothing is more pleasant than that.*

*Nobody is more delightful than he.*

### THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

- 781 The ablative is sometimes used to express the cause or reason.

Victōriā gaudet.

*He rejoices in his victory (because of his victory, on account of his victory).*

Spē dēlector.

*I take delight in hope.*

#### Note:

- 782 1. This is especially common with verbs of emotion like gaudeō, *rejoice*; laetor, *rejoice*; etc.
- 783 2. Cause is more often expressed by prepositions, such as propter, ob, *on account of*, with the accusative.
- 784 3. The *preventing cause* is expressed by prae and the ablative.

Prae gaudiō loquī nōn potuit.

*He was unable to speak for joy.*

## THE ABLATIVE AS OBJECT

- 785 The object of *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and their compounds is put in the ablative.

Eōdem cōnsiliō ūsī sunt.

*They used the same plan.*

Note:

- 786 1. For *potior* with the genitive see No. 721.
- 787 2. *ūtor*, *ūtī*, *ūsus sum*, 3, *intr.*, *use*  
*fruor*, *frui*, *fructus sum*, 3, *intr.*, *enjoy*  
*fungor*, *fungi*, *fūctus sum*, 3, *intr.*, *perform*  
*potior*, *potiri*, *potitus sum*, 4, *intr.*, *gain possession of*  
*vescor*, *vesci*, 3, *intr.*, *feed on*

## THE ABLATIVE OF PRICE

- 788 The ablative of a noun,  
of a noun and an adjective,  
or of a neuter adjective of quantity  
is used with verbs of 'buying,' 'selling,' 'costing,' *etc.*,  
to express the PRICE.

Domum vili pretiō vēdidit.

*He sold the house cheap (for a small price).*

Corpus aurō vēdidit.

*He sold the body for gold.*

- 789 Note: But the genitives *tantī*, *quantī*, *plūris*, *minōris*, are used with these verbs instead of the ablative (see No. 705).

Quantī cōstat?

*What does it cost?*

*How much does it cost?*

## PRONOUNS

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

- 790 **DEFINITION:** A demonstrative is a word that POINTS OUT.

*This* book ; *that* sword ; *these* ; *those* men.

- 791 The demonstratives are:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{hic, haec, hoc, 'this' (pl. 'these')} \\ \textit{is, ea, id, 'that' (pl. 'those')} \\ \textit{ille, illa, illud, 'that' (pl. 'those')} \\ \textit{iste, ista, istud, 'that' (pl. 'those')} \end{array} \right.$

- 792 *Hic* points out that which is close to the speaker.  
*Is* is unemphatic and points to the person or thing spoken of.  
*Ille* points to that which is distant or emphasized.  
*Iste* points out that which is near the person spoken to.

1. *Hic, is, ille, iste*, may be used:

- 793 a. as PRONOUNS (rule of agreement, No. 479).

Caesar rēgem hostium cēpit. Hunc occīdit.

*Caesar captured the king of the enemy. This man he killed.*

Illa vērā erant.

Those things were true.

- 794 b. as ADJECTIVES (rules of agreement, Nos. 477-478).

Hanc urbem cēpērunt.

*They captured this city.*

In eōs  militēs impetum fēcit.  
*He made an attack on those soldiers.*

- 795 2. When *hic* and *ille* are used in CONTRAST,  
*hic* refers to the thing that is closer  
 or that has been mentioned more recently ('the latter');  
*ille* refers to the thing that is farther away  
 or that has been mentioned previously ('the former').

Hanc urbem jam habēmus; illam urbem oppugnā-  
 bimus.  
*We already have this city; that city (yonder) we  
 shall attack.*

- 796 3. *Is* is regularly used as the personal pronoun of the  
 THIRD person. Less frequently *ille* is so used. *Ille*  
 is always more emphatic.

Caesar eum occīdit.  
*Caesar killed him.*  
Ille captus erat.  
*He had been captured.*

- 797 4. *Is* (less frequently *ille*) is used as the antecedent of  
 the relative.

Is quī sine spē pugnat, nōn fortiter pugnat.  
*He who fights without hope, does not fight bravely.*

- 798 5. *Ille*, especially when it follows the noun it modifies,  
 often means 'the famous.'

Caesar ille  
*The famous Caesar*

- 799 6. *Iste* often implies contempt. (*Iste* therefore translates the English 'that' when spoken in scorn.)

Iste homō!

That fellow!

## REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

- 800 *Ego* (*nōs*), *tū* (*vōs*), with the adjectives *meus*, *a*, *um*, *noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum*, *tuus*, *a*, *um*, *vester*, *vestra*, *vestrum*, are also used as REFLEXIVES of the first and second persons for 'myself,' 'ourselves,' 'yourself,' 'yourselves,' 'my own,' 'your own,' etc.

Patrem tuum occīdisti.

You killed your own father.

- 801 The reflexive pronoun of the third person is:  
*suī* (*sibi*, *sē*, *sē*), *him*, *himself*, *her*, *herself*, *it*, *itself*, *them*, *themselves*, *oneself*.

- 802 The reflexive possessive of the third person is:  
*suus*, *a*, *um*, *his*, *his own*, *her*, *her own*, *its*, *its own*, *their*, *their own*, *one's*, *one's own*.

*Suī* and *suus* MUST BE USED rather than forms of *is* (or *ille*):

(Direct Reflexive)

- 803 1. When a pronoun of the THIRD person refers to the subject of its OWN CLAUSE.

Sē rēx laudāvit.

The king praised himself.

Sē interfēcit.

He killed himself.

(Indirect Reflexive)

- 804 2. When a pronoun of the third person in an accusative with the infinitive, in a purpose clause, or in an indirect question refers to the subject of the MAIN clause.

Dixit suos ventūrōs esse.

*He said his (own) men would come.*

Caesar dixit sē pugnātūrum esse.

*Caesar said that he would fight.*

- 805 3. When a pronoun of the third person in a subjunctive clause which expresses the thought, intention, or will of the agent of the action in the MAIN clause refers to the subject of the MAIN clause.

Caesar mīlitibus imperāvit ut sē sequerentur.

*Caesar ordered the soldiers to follow him.*

Mīlitēs laudāvit quod sē dēfendissent.

*He praised the soldiers because they had defended him.*

Dixit eōs quī sē dēfendissent praemia acceptūrōs esse.

*He said that those who defended him would receive rewards.*

**Note:**

- 806 1. Otherwise the forms of the non-reflexives **is, ea, id** (**ille, illa, illud** and **ējus, eōrum, illōrum, illīus**) must be used for the pronoun of the third person.
- 807 2. The reflexive forms are sometimes used to refer to other cases than that of the subject.

Hannibalem suī cīvēs ē cīvitate ējēcērunt.

*His own fellow citizens expelled Hannibal from the state.*

**THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN**

- 808 1. ***Ipsē, ipsa, ipsum***, is frequently used as an adjective to strengthen nouns and personal pronouns (expressed or implied). It is to be translated as 'himself,' 'herself,' 'itself,' 'themselves.' The MEANING of the word which ***ipse*** modifies or refers to determines which of the translations of ***ipse*** is to be used.

Caesar ipse vēnit.

*Caesar himself came.*

(Caesar is a man; therefore: *himself*.)

Ipsa vēritās pulchra est.

*Truth itself is beautiful.*

(Truth is a thing; therefore: *itself*.)

Ipsī vēnērunt.

*They themselves came.*

(***Ipsī*** agrees with the subject of ***vēnērunt***, *they*; therefore: *themselves*.)



- 809 2. *Ipse, ipsa, ipsum*, especially when used with a demonstrative pronoun (*hic, is, ille, iste*), may sometimes be translated by the adjective 'very.'

In hāc ipsā urbe

*In this very city*

- 810 3. *Ipse* is often used to strengthen REFLEXIVE pronouns. In this case however *ipse* often agrees not with the reflexive pronoun but with the subject of the clause.

Rēx sē ipse laudat.

*The king praises himself.* (*Ipse* strengthens *sē* but agrees with *rēx* in the nominative.)

- 811 4. *Ipse* may be used to strengthen a POSSESSIVE adjective. It is then put in the GENITIVE as though the adjective were a possessive genitive.

Propter nostram ipsōrum salūtem fūgimus.

*We fled on account of our own safety.*

Tuum ipsius patrem nōn dēfendistī.

*You did not defend your own father.*

- 812 5. *Ipse* may also be used as a pronoun. It is then translated as a pronoun of the third person with or without 'himself,' 'herself,' etc.

Caesar servōs rēgis occīdit. Ipsū cēpit.

*Caesar killed the servants of the king. Him (the king himself) he took captive.*

Caesar lēgātōs dīmīsit. Ipse ad flūmen contendit.

*Caesar dismissed the envoys. He (himself) hastened to the river.*

## IDEM, EADEM, IDEM

- 813 *Idem, eadem, idem*, 'same,' may be used either as an adjective or as a pronoun.

Adjective: In eōdem locō castra posuit.

*He pitched camp in the same place.*

Pronoun: Eadem dīxit.

*He said the same things.*

- 814 *Idem* in apposition with a subject or object often has the force of 'also,' 'likewise.'

Quod idem mihi accidit.

*Which also happened to me (lit.: which same thing).*

Bonus vir quem eundem sapientem appellāmus.

*A good man whom we also call wise.*

## SOME

Someone (somebody), something, some:

1. Opposed to 'no one,' 'none':

- 815 a. Pronoun: aliquis, aliquid, *someone, something*.

Adjective: aliquis, aliqua, aliquod, *some*.

Aliquem vīdī.

*I saw somebody.*

Ad mē aliquōs librōs mitte.

*Send me some books.*

816

- b. Nōnnūllī, *ae, a, some, a few, or*  
*sunt quī, there are (those) who . . .*  
 and a characteristic clause (No. 633).

Nōnnūllī dē nostrō interitū cōgitant.  
*Some meditate our destruction.*

Sunt quī dē nostrō interitū cōgitent.  
*Some meditate our destruction.*

[Lit.: *There are (those) who meditate our destruction.*]

817

2. 'Some' in the sense of 'considerable number':  
*aliquot* (indeclinable adjective), 'some.'

Jam aliquot annōs  
*Now for some years*

3. 'Someone' ('some') in the sense of 'someone (some) or other':

818

- a. Pronoun: *quispiam, quidpiam* (or *quippiam*),  
*someone, something.*

Adjective: *quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, some.*

Quaeret quispiam.  
*Somebody or other will ask.*

819

- b. Pronoun: *nesciōquis, nesciōquid*,  
*someone, something.*

Adjective: *nesciōquī, nesciōqua, nesciōquod*,  
*some.*

Nesciōquis vēnit.  
*Someone or other came.*

- 820 4. 'Someone' ('some'), 'a certain' in the sense of 'a certain one,' 'some definite one' (equivalent to the English indefinite article):

Pronoun: quīdam, quiddam, *a certain one, a certain thing.*

Adjective: quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *certain.*

Quīdam philosophus hoc dixit.

*A (certain) philosopher said this* (i. e., some definite philosopher).

Quaedam scīre dēbēs.

*You ought to know certain things.*

- 821 **Note:** Quīdam is often used as an adjective to limit a strong phrase. Translate: *certain, a kind of, or as it were.*

Poētae divīnō quōdam spīritū inflantur.

*Poets are inspired by a certain divine breath.*

*Poets are inspired, as it were, by a divine breath.*

## ONE . . . OTHER (ANOTHER)

- 822 1. Of more than two:

*one . . . another, alius, a, ud . . . alius, a, ud.*

*some . . . others, aliī, ae, a . . . aliī, ae, a.*

Alius divitiās quaerit, alius honōrēs.

*One seeks riches, another honors.*

Aliī fūgērunt, aliī sē dēdidērunt.

*Some fled, others surrendered.*

## 823 2. Of two only:

*one . . . the other, alter, altera, alterum . . . alter, altera, alterum.*

*one (group) . . . the other (group), alterī, ae, a . . . alterī, ae, a.*

Alter sapientior est, alter fortior.

*The one is wiser, the other braver.*

Alterī Caesarī inimicī sunt, alterī amicī.

*The one party is hostile to Caesar, the other party is friendly.*

## ONE

824 1. When 'one' refers to one OF TWO, it is generally translated by *alter, altera, alterum*.

Alter oculus, one eye

(We have only TWO eyes.)

Alter frāter, one brother

(When there are only TWO brothers.)

## 825 2. When the English has: "One does one thing, another another," the Latin combines this into one expression, thus:

*One seeks one thing, another another.*

Alius aliud quaerit.

*One praises one person, another another.*

Alius alium laudat.

*Some think one thing, others another thing.*

Alii alia sentiunt.

- 826 3. In simple enumerations *alter, altera, alterum* is used for 'the second,' instead of *secundus, a, um*.

*Prīma diēs, altera diēs, tertia diēs*

*The first day, the second day, the third day*

### OTHER

- 827 1. 'The other' (of TWO): *alter, altera, alterum*.  
'The other group' (of TWO): *alterī, alterae, altera*.

Alter occīsus est.

*The other was killed.*

Alterī Caesarem adjūvērunt.

*The other group helped Caesar.*

- 828 2. 'Others,' in general: *aliī, ae, a*.

*Rōmānī aliōs regere scīvērunt.*

*The Romans knew how to rule others.*

- 829 3. 'The others,' 'the rest,' after a part is removed:

- a. *cēterī, ae, a, (all) the rest.*

*Hic mīles cēterōs virtūte superat.*

*This soldier surpasses { (all) the others } in courage.*  
*the rest*

- 830 b. *reliquī, ae, a, the others, those remaining.*

*Duās legiōnēs in Belgās mīsit, reliquās in hībernās dēdūxit.*

*He sent two legions into Belgium, the others (the remaining legions) he led into winter quarters.*

## EACH

- 831 1. Pronoun: *quisque, quidque*, 'each one,' 'each thing,' 'every one.'

Adjective: *quisque, quaeque, quodque*, 'each,' 'every' (or *ūnusquisque, ūnaquaeque*, etc.)

- 832 a. with reflexive pronouns;

Suam quisque patriam diligit.

*Each man*  
*Every man* } loves his own country.

- 833 b. with ordinal numerals;

Decimum quemque occīdī jussit.

*He ordered every tenth man to be killed* (lit.: *each tenth man*).

- 834 c. with relative and interrogative pronouns and in indirect questions;

Quem quisque diligit, eum laudat.

*Each man praises the one he loves.*

Sciō quid quisque dixerit.

*I know what each one said.*

- 835 d. with superlatives *quisque* is nearly ALWAYS in the singular except when neuter.

Optimus quisque patriam diligit.

*Each best man loves his country.*

All the best men love their country.

Optima quaeque quaerimus.

*We seek all the best things.*

- 836 2. In other cases *singulī*, *ae*, *a* or *ūnusquisque* are generally used for 'each.' Note that *singulī* is always PLURAL.

*Singulī abiērunt.*

*Ūnusquisque abiit.*

*Each one went away.*

3. 'Each,' 'either,' 'both,' when speaking of TWO:

- 837 a. When the two are spoken of SEPARATELY:

Pronoun or adjective: *uterque*, *utraque*, *utrumque*,  
*each*, *either*.

- 838 b. When the two are spoken of TOGETHER:

Pronoun or adjective: *ambo*, *ambae*, *ambo*, *both*.

*Duo senātōrēs mihi obviam sunt factī; ambōs salūtāvī; uterque resalūtāvit.*

*Two senators met me; I greeted them both; each returned my greeting.*

4. 'Each other'; 'one another' (reciprocal pronouns):

- 839 a. *alter . . . alter*; *alius . . . alius*;

*Frātrēs alter alterum diligere dēbent.*

*Brothers ought to love each other.*

(Lit.: *Brothers ought to love, each the other.*)

(*Alter* is in apposition, though SINGULAR, with the subject; *alterum* is the object of *diligere*.)

*Gallī alius alium adjuvant.*

*The Gauls help each other.*

- 840 b. *inter sē*, *inter nōs*, *inter vōs*.

*Obsidēs inter sē dant.*

*They give each other hostages.*

(Lit.: *They give hostages among themselves.*)



## ANYONE; ANY

## 841 1. Unemphatic:

Chiefly after *sī, nisi, num, nē, quō, quantō, quandō, ubi, unde, ut (as), cum, alius*:

Pronoun: *quis, quid, anyone, anything*.

Adjective: *quī, qua (quae), quod, any*.

Nē quis . . . *mīrētur* . . .

*Lest anyone should marvel* . . .

Sī qua causa est . . .

*If there is any reason* . . .

## 2. Emphatic:

## 842 a. In questions expecting a negative answer:

Pronoun: *ecquis, ecquid = num quis*.

Adjective: *ecquis, ecqua, ecquod*.

Ecquis hoc crēdit?

*Does anyone believe this?*

(Answer expected: "No one.")

843 b. In interrogative and negative sentences and after *vix, vērō, quasi, quasi vērō, sine (without)*:

Pronoun: *quisquam, quidquam (or quicquam), anyone, anything*.

Adjective: *ūllus, a, um, any*.

*Vōbīs nōn dabō quidquam.*

*I will not give you anything.*

*Sine ūllā spē*

*Without any hope*

844

c. In positive declarative sentences (*anyone at all*):

Pronoun: **quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs**  
**quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet.**

Adjective: **quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs**  
**quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet.**

Quīvīs hoc facere potest.

Anyone (*at all*) can do this.

# ADJECTIVES

## SPECIAL USES OF ADJECTIVES

Adjectives may be used as nouns. This use is:

1. Very frequent, especially to designate a general class:

- 845 a. in the masculine plural.

Nostrī fortiter pugnābant.

*Our men were fighting bravely.*

Fortūna fortēs adjuvat.

*Fortune helps the brave.*

- 846 b. in the neuter nominative and accusative plural.

Vēra dīcit.

*He speaks the truth (lit.: true things).*

2. Less frequent:

- 847 a. in the masculine singular and only to stand for a class.

Sapiēns omnia sua sēcum portat.

*The wise man carries all his possessions with him.*

- 848 b. in the neuter singular, generally of adjectives of the first and second declensions only.

Vērum dīcit.

*He speaks the truth.*

Parvō contentus est.

*He is content with little.*

- 849 Latin often uses ADJECTIVES expressing a state of body or soul where the English uses ADVERBS.

Militēs in castra tūtī pervēnērunt.

*The soldiers arrived in the camp safely (lit.: safe).*

- 850 *Ultimus, sōlus, p̄rimus*, and similar adjectives are often equivalent to a relative clause.

*P̄rimus in urbem vēnit.*

*He was the first* { *one who came into the city.*  
*to come into the city.*

(Lit.: *He came as the first one.*)

- 851 *Summus*, 'highest'; *medius*, 'middle'; *īmus*, 'lowest'; *īnfimus*, 'lowest'; *interior*, 'inner'; *intimus*, 'innermost'; *p̄rimus*, 'first'; *postrēmus*, 'last'; *ultimus*, 'last'; *reliquus*, 'remaining' (generally standing before their noun), often mean PART of the object.

*Militēs in summō colle instrūxit.*

*He drew up the soldiers on the top of the hill.*

*Per mediam urbem contendit.*

*He hastened through the middle of the city.*

- 852 When *multus* is joined to another adjective to modify the same noun *et* is generally used.

*Erant multae et magnae urbēs in Italiā.*

*There were many large cities in Italy.*

## COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES

The Latin comparative may be translated:

- 853 1. by the English comparative.

*Hoc flūmen lātius est quam Tiberis.*

*This river is wider than the Tiber.*

- 854 2. by *somewhat* or *too* with the English positive.

*Mōns altior est.*

*The mountain is somewhat high.*

- 855 **Note:** In expressions like: "He was braver than he was safe," the Latin generally uses the COMPARATIVE in both parts of the comparison.

Fortior erat quam tūtor.

*He was braver than he was safe.*

### SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES

- 856 Superlative adjectives are used much more in Latin than in English. They are therefore weaker and may often be translated by 'very' with the English positive or even by the English positive alone.

Maximum impetum in eōs fēcērunt.

*They made a very strong (or strong) attack on them.*

**Note:**

- 857 1. To express the ABSOLUTE superlative, the Latin superlative is used with ūnus, a, um and omnium or simply with omnium.

Hic mōns ūnus omnium altissimus est.

*This mountain is the (one) highest of all.*

Hoc flūmen est omnium longissimum.

*This river is the longest of all.*

- 858 2. When a superlative modifies the antecedent of a relative it is regularly put into the relative clause.

Centuriōnem quī fortissimus in castrīs erat mīsit.

*He sent the bravest centurion who was in the camp.*

(Not: Centuriōnem fortissimum . . . )

- 859 3. The adverb vel, *very*, is sometimes used to strengthen a superlative.

Vel maxima virtūs

*The very greatest courage*

## VERBAL NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

### THE SUPINE

#### 1. IN -UM

860 The supine in *-um* may be used to express purpose after verbs of motion.

It may have a word-object (not a clause-object).

It may be modified by adverbs.

Lēgātī pācem petitum vēnērunt.

*Envoys came to seek peace.*

Eōs ad mē mane salūtātum miserās.

*You had sent them to salute me in the morning.*

#### 2. IN -Ū

861 The supine in *-ū* may be used to express RESPECT after *fās est*, *nefās est*, *opus est*, and some adjectives.

It may take only a clause-object (not a word-object).

It may not be modified by an adverb.

Mirābile dictū

*Marvelous to relate*

Nefās est dictū miseram esse tālem senectūtem.

*It is criminal to call such an old age miserable.*

#### Note:

862 1. The only supines in *-ū* in common use are: *dictū*, to say; *factū*, to do; *audītū*, to hear; *cognitū*, to learn; *vīsū*, to see; *intellēctū*, to understand.

863 2. The adjectives which take a supine in *-ū* are especially: *facilis* (*difficilis*), *pulcher*, *crēdibilis* (*incrēdibilis*), *bonus* (*malus*).

## THE GERUND

864 The gerund is a verbal noun. It has all the cases except the nominative.

As a VERB: 1. It is modified by adverbs and takes objects.

2. It is always active in meaning.

As a NOUN it is used in all the case usages of nouns, *but*:

1. The accusative of the gerund is used chiefly after *ad* or *in*; not as the object of a transitive verb.
2. The ablative is never used with *sine*, *without*, or *cum*, *with*.

Genitive: Pugnandī cupidī sunt.  
*They are eager for fighting.*  
*They are eager to fight.*

Pugnandī causā vēnērunt.  
*They came for the sake of fighting.*

Dative: Scribendō sē dedit.  
*He devoted himself to writing.*

Accusative: Ad explōrandum missus est.  
*He was sent for reconnoitering.*  
*He was sent to reconnoiter.*

Ablative: Dē bene scribendō locūtus est.  
*He spoke about writing well.*  
 Mēns cōgitandō excolitur.  
*The mind is developed by thinking.*

## THE GERUNDIVE

## THE GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION

**865**     The gerundive is a PASSIVE VERBAL ADJECTIVE. As a VERB it expresses action and may be modified by adverbs and adverbial phrases.

As an ADJECTIVE it agrees with a noun or noun-equivalent.

The gerundive has two general uses:

1. As an attributive adjective in the oblique cases. In this use it directly modifies a noun and has the meaning of:

**866**     a. a present passive participle.

ponte faciendō  
*by building a bridge*  
(Lit.: *by a bridge being built*)

**867**     b. a future passive participle.

dē ponte faciendō  
*about building a bridge*  
(Lit.: *about a bridge to be built*)

2. To express obligation or necessity:

**868**     a. as a predicate adjective with *sum*. (See Nos. 878-884.)

**869**     b. as an attributive adjective.

Hostis nōn metuendus  
*An enemy not to be feared*



THE ATTRIBUTIVE GERUNDIVE AS A  
SUBSTITUTE FOR THE GERUND

- 870 When the gerund would have an ACCUSATIVE OBJECT the gerundive construction is generally used instead of the gerund.

EXAMPLE: They are desirous of seeing the city.

The gerund construction would be: *Urbem videndī cupidī sunt*. Since the *urbem* would be an accusative object the construction is changed to the gerundive as follows:

1. The accusative object is put in the case of the gerund.

Urbis (The gerund *videndī* is genitive.)

2. The gerundive is made to agree with it.

Urbis videndae

The complete sentence now is:

*Urbis videndae cupidī sunt.*

(Lit.: *They are eager for the city to-be-seen.*)

*They are desirous of seeing the city.*

*They are eager to see the city.*

EXAMPLE: They were sent to capture the town.

The gerund construction would be:

*Ad capiendum urbem missī sunt.*

*They were sent for capturing the city.*

The gerundive construction:

*Ad urbem capiendam missī sunt.*

*They were sent for the city to-be-captured.*

**Note:**

- 871 1. The gerundive construction should always be used when the gerund with an object would be in the dative or would follow a preposition.

Ad urbem videndam vēnit.

*He came to see the city.*

(The gerund would be: ad urbem videndum, which should never be used.)

- 872 2. The gerundive construction after **ad** or **causā** (*w. gen.*) is a common way of expressing purpose.

*They came to see the leader.*

Ad ducem videndum vēnērunt.

*They came to seize the bridge.*

Pontis capiendī causā vēnērunt.

3. The gerundive construction is NOT used :

- 873 a. when the object of the gerund is a neuter pronoun or adjective.

Vērūm investigandī causā

*For the sake of discovering the truth*

- 874 b. when a series of **-ōrums** or **-ārums** would result.

*For the sake of taking up these arms*

(Gerundive would be: hōrum armōrum capiendōrum causā.)

Haec arma capiendī causā

- 875 4. As a rule only transitive verbs can be used in the gerundive. **Ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, however, which were transitive in old Latin, are regularly used in this gerundive construction.

In fungendō mūnere

*In performing the duty*

(Lit.: *In the duty-being-performed*)

- 876 5. DEPONENT verbs are used in this gerundive construction.

In eīs sequendis multās hōrās cōsūmpsērunt.

*They consumed many hours* { *in pursuing them.*  
*in them-being-pursued.*

- 877 6. The forms *meī*, *tuī*, *suī*, *nostrī*, *vestrī* are always used with the gerundive in the singular agreeing with them, irrespective of gender or number.

*Nostrī* servandī causā in castra fūgimus.

*We fled into the camp to save ourselves.*

(*Nostrī* refers to *we* in the verb *fūgimus* but the gerundive is *servandī* not *servandōrum*.)

*Mulierēs suī* cōservandī causā fūgērunt.

*The women fled to save themselves.*

(*Cōservandī* not *cōservandārum* is used, although *suī* refers to the FEMININE PLURAL *mulierēs*.)

## THE GERUNDIVE AS A PREDICATE ADJECTIVE WITH *SUM*

- 878 To express OBLIGATION or NECESSITY the gerundive may be used as a predicate adjective with the proper form of the verb *sum*.

*Deus laudandus est.*

*God is to-be-praised.*

*God should be praised.*

*God ought to be praised.*

*God must be praised.*

*God has to be praised.*

*It is necessary to praise God.*

Vōs laudandī nōn estis.

*You should not be praised.*

Hoc faciendum nōn fuit.

*This was not to-be-done.*

*This should not have been done.*

- 879 **Note:** As a predicate adjective **laudandus, a, um** follows the usual rule of agreement for predicate adjectives, Nos. 474-476.

- 880 **With transitive verbs use the gerundive personally.**

Deus laudandus est.

*God is to be praised.*

Dixī Deum laudandum esse.

*I said God should be praised.*

Rogāvit num Deus laudandus esset.

*He asked whether God should be praised.*

- 881 **With intransitive verbs  
or with transitive verbs without a subject  
use the gerundive impersonally.**

(If an intransitive verb has a subject in English, put the subject in the case governed by the verb.)

**Transitive verb without a subject:**

Vincendum est.

*(It must be conquered.)*

*It is necessary to conquer.*

**Genitive verb:**

Meī obliviscendum nōn est.

*I should not be forgotten.*

Dative verb:

Deō serviendum est.  
*God should be served.*

Ablative verb:

Diligentiā ūtendum est.  
*Care should be used.*

Intransitive verb in the accusative with the infinitive:

Dixi Deō serviendum esse.  
*I said that God should be served.*

Intransitive verb in a subordinate clause:

Rogāvit num Deō serviendum esset.  
*He asked whether God should be served.*

- 882 To express the AGENT with the gerundive use the DATIVE;  
but *ab* (*ā*) and the ablative when there is another dative in the same clause.

Deus nōbīs laudandus est.  
*We should praise God.*  
*We ought to praise God.*  
*We are to praise God.*  
*We must praise God.*  
*It is necessary that we praise God.*  
*It is necessary for us to praise God.*  
*God should be praised by us.*  
*God ought to be praised by us.*

Diligentiā nōbīs ūtendum est.  
*We should use care.*

Deō ā nōbīs serviendum est.

*We should serve God.*

(Ā nōbīs is used because of the dative Deō.)

Dixī Deō ā nōbīs serviendum esse.

*I said we should serve God.*

Dixī Deum nōbīs laudandum esse.

*I said we should praise God.*

Rogāvit num Deus nōbīs laudandus esset.

*He asked whether we should praise God.*

Rogāvit num Deō ā nōbīs serviendum esset.

*He asked whether we should serve God.*

#### THE GERUNDIVE AS A PREDICATE ADJECTIVE WITH OTHER VERBS

- 883 *Dō*, 'I give'; *trādō*, 'I hand over'; *cūrō*, 'I take care of'; *suscipiō*, 'I undertake'; and the like may take an accusative object and a gerundive in agreement.

Urbem militibus dīripiendam trādidit.

*He handed over the city to the soldiers to plunder.*

(Lit.: the city to-be-plundered.)

Classem aedificandam suscēpī.

*I undertook the building of a fleet.*

(Lit.: I undertook a fleet to-be-built.)

- 884 **Note:** In the passive, the object will become the subject nominative and the gerundive will agree with it.

Urbs militibus dīripienda trādita est.

*The city was handed over to the soldiers to be plundered.*

## TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE AND THE PARTICIPLE

## TENSE BY RELATION

- 885 1. The PRESENT infinitive and the PRESENT participle express action as GOING ON AT THE TIME of the action of the finite verb in their clause.

Infinitive: Sciō tē pugnāre.

*I know that you are fighting.*

*(You are now fighting and I now know it.)*

Sciŕi tē pugnāre.

*I knew that you were fighting.*

*(You were then fighting and I then knew it.)*

Participle: Ōrāns Deum laudō.

*Praying I praise God.*

*(I praise God while praying.)*

Eōs pugnāntēs hortātus est.

*He encouraged them fighting (as they fought).*

*(He encouraged them at the time when they were fighting.)*

Pugnāns vulnerātus est.

*He was wounded (while) fighting.*

*(He was wounded at the time when he was fighting.)*

Servis clāmantibus, dominus occīsus est.

*The master was killed while the slaves shouted.*

*(The slaves were shouting at the same time that the master was killed.)*

- 886 2. The PERFECT infinitive and the PERFECT participle express action as COMPLETED BEFORE the action of the verb in their clause.

Infinitive: Sciō tē hoc fēcisse.

*I know that you did this.*

(i. e., *You did it before and I now know it.*)

Scīvī tē hoc fēcisse.

*I knew that you had done this.*

(i. e., *You did it before I knew it.*)

Participle: Militēs instrūctī impetum sustinent.

*The soldiers, having been drawn up, are withstanding the attack.*

(i. e., *They have been drawn up and are NOW withstanding the attack.*)

Militēs instrūctī impetum sustinuērunt.

*The soldiers, having been drawn up, withstood the attack.*

(i. e., *They were drawn up and then withstood the attack.*)

Urbe captā, cōpiam frūmentī habēmus.

*The city having been captured, we have a supply of grain.*

(i. e., *After the capture of the city we now have a supply of grain.*)

Urbe captā, hostēs sē dēdidērunt.

*The city having been captured, the enemy surrendered.*

(i. e., *The city was captured and then they surrendered.*)



- 887 3. The **FUTURE** infinitive and the **FUTURE** participle express action which **WILL TAKE PLACE AFTER** the action of the verb in their clause.

Infinitive: Sciō tē Gallōs victūrum esse.

*I know that you will conquer the Gauls.*

Scīvī tē Gallōs victūrum esse.

*I knew that you would conquer the Gauls.*

Participle: Itūrus haec dīcit.

*Being about to go, he says these things.*

Itūrus haec dīxit.

*Being about to go, he said these things.*

## THE INFINITIVE

888 The infinitive is a **VERBAL NOUN**.

As a **VERB** it has **TENSE** and **VOICE**, may take **OBJECTS**, both direct and indirect, and may be modified by adverbs or adverbial expressions.

As a **NOUN** it may be used as a **NEUTER** noun in noun constructions but only in the nominative and accusative cases. An adjective or pronoun may agree with the infinitive in the neuter singular. (See first example under No. 889.)

## THE INFINITIVE IN NOUN CONSTRUCTIONS

889 1. The infinitive may be used as **SUBJECT**, **OBJECT**, **PREDICATE NOUN**, and (rarely) **appositive**.

As subject: *Ōrāre est bonum.*

*To pray*  
*Praying* } *is good.*

As predicate noun: *Laudāre Deum est ōrāre.*  
*To praise God is to pray.*

As object: *Pugnāre timent*  
*They fear to fight.*

## 2. This use of the infinitive is very common:

890 a. with nouns and neuter adjectives with **est**, **erat**, etc.

*Mōs fuit fortēs laudāre.*  
*It was the custom to praise the brave.*

*Nōn est malum sē dēfendere.*  
*It is not bad to defend oneself.<sup>1</sup>*

<sup>1</sup>*Oneself*, the object of the infinitive, is an indefinite reflexive (No. 801).

891

- b. after such impersonal verbs as *piget*, *it annoys*; *pudet*, *it shames*; *oportet*,<sup>1</sup> *it behooves*; *licet*,<sup>1</sup> *it is allowed*; *necesse est*,<sup>1</sup> *it is necessary*; *praestat*, *it is better*; *placet*, *it pleases*; *convenit*, *it is becoming*.

*Īre necesse est.*

*It is necessary to go.*

*Quis tē dēfendere audet?*

*Who dares to defend you?*

892

- c. after verbs which require further action by the same subject to complete their meaning, such as *possum*, *am able*; *dēbeō*, *ought*; *volō*, *wish*; *nōlō*, *am unwilling*; *mālō*, *prefer*; *cupiō*, *desire*; *studeō*, *am eager*; *contendō*, *strive*; *soleō*, *am accustomed*; *incipiō*, *begin*; *cōnor*, *try*; *audeō*, *dare*; *doceō*, *teach*; *discō*, *learn*; *dubitō*, *hesitate*; *oblīvīscor*, *forget*; *timeō*, *fear*; *dēcernō*, *determine*; etc.

*Militēs Rōmānī fortiter pugnāre solēbant.*

*Roman soldiers were accustomed to fight bravely.*

*Exercitus superārī nōn potuit.*

*The army could not be conquered.*

<sup>1</sup>These verbs may also take the subjunctive without *ut* (No. 641).

- 893 3. When the SENSE requires it, the infinitive may have a SUBJECT IN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.<sup>1</sup>

As subject: Populōs inter sē pugnāre malum est.  
*That nations fight among themselves is bad.*

As object: Caesar eōs in castris manēre jussit.  
*Caesar ordered them to remain in the camp.*

**Note:**

- 894 1. A predicate adjective or predicate noun after the infinitive agrees with the word, expressed or understood, to which it refers.

Oportet militēs esse parātōs.  
*It behooves soldiers to be prepared.*

Semper esse parātum bonum est (hominem understood).  
*It is good to be always ready.*  
*(It is good that a man be always ready.)*

Puerī boni esse possunt.  
*Boys can be good.*  
 (Bonī here REFERS to puerī and hence must agree with it.)

- 895 2. Jubeō, order, vetō, forbid, sinō, allow, are used personally in the passive.

Active: Eōs pugnāre jussit.  
*He ordered them to fight.*

Passive: Eī pugnāre jussī sunt.  
*They were ordered to fight.*

- 896 3. Note that the infinitive in these constructions (Nos. 889-895) is regularly in the PRESENT tense unless (rarely) the SENSE demands a different tense.

Prō patriā pugnāvisse pulchrum est.  
*It is glorious to have fought for one's fatherland.*

<sup>1</sup>This is common especially with *volō*, 'wish,' *nōlō*, 'am unwilling,' *mālō*, 'prefer,' *cupiō*, 'desire,' *patior*, 'allow'; with the active voice of *jubeō*, 'order,' *vetō*, 'forbid,' *sinō*, 'permit'; and with verbs of emotion (No. 715).

**THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE AFTER  
VERBS OF SAYING, THINKING, AND THE LIKE**

- 897** Verbs of 'saying,' 'thinking,' 'perceiving,' and the like take the **ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE**. The subject of the infinitive is in the **ACCUSATIVE**; the verb is in the infinitive; the tense of the infinitive is determined strictly by the rule: Tense by Relation (Nos. 885-887).

Sciō tē pugnāre.

*I know that you are fighting.*

- 898** In this use the accusative with the infinitive is equivalently a **NOUN CLAUSE**.

Audivī tē pugnāre.

*I heard that you were fighting.*

Putō tē pugnātūrum esse.

*I think that you will fight.*

Sciō tē pugnāvisse.

*I know that you* { fought.  
                              *were fighting.*

Scīvī tē pugnāvisse.

*I knew that you had fought.*

Putāvī tē pugnātūrum esse.

*I thought that you would fight.*

Sciō eōs vincī.

*I know that they are being conquered.*

Sciō Gallōs ā Rōmānīs victōs esse.

*I know that Gauls were conquered by the Romans.*

**Note:**

- 899 1. The future infinitive active is formed with the future participle active and the present infinitive of **sum, esse**. The perfect infinitive passive is formed with the perfect participle passive and the present infinitive of **sum, esse**. In both cases the participle is used in a compound tense like a predicate adjective and must therefore agree with the subject accusative.

Dīcō militēs nostrōs victūrōs esse.

*I say that our men will conquer.*

Dīcō hanc gentem pugnātūrā esse.

*I say that this nation will fight.*

Audīvī Rōmā oppugnātā esse.

*I heard that Rome had been attacked.*

Sciō Rōmānōs victōs nōn esse.

*I know that the Romans were not conquered.*

- 900 2. A predicate adjective in the accusative with the infinitive will of course agree with the subject accusative.

Dīcō hanc civitātem liberā semper futūrā esse.

*I say that this state will always be free.*

Sciō Deū esse bonū.

*I know that God is good.*

3. When the verb of *saying, thinking, perceiving, etc.*, is in the PASSIVE:

- 901 a. If it is a COMPOUND tense, it is generally used impersonally and takes the accusative with the infinitive.

Trāditum est primōs rēgēs bonōs fuisse.

*It has been handed down that the first kings were good.*

902

- b. If it is an UNCOMPOUNDED tense, it is generally used personally and takes the infinitive, tense by relation.

Rēx dicitur fūgisse.

*The king is said to have fled.*

*It is said that the king has fled.*

Ille vir dīcitur esse rēx.

*That man is said to be the king.*

*It is said that that man is the king.*

Dīcitur occīsus esse.

*He is said to have been killed.*

*It is said that he has been killed.*

Putātur rēx futūrus esse.

*It is thought that he will be king.*

(Lit.: *He is thought to be about to be king.*)

903

- Note:** Videor, *seem*, always follows No. 902, but vidētur mihi, etc., *it seems well to me*, etc. (*I decide*) is always used impersonally and takes the (accusative with) the infinitive. Crēditur, *it is believed*, regularly takes the accusative with the infinitive.

Eum audire vīsus sum.

*I seemed to hear him.*

Nōbīs vīsum est { lēgātōs mittere.  
                                  lēgātōs mittī.

*We decided to send envoys.*

Crēditur eum esse rēgem.

*It is believed that he is a king.*

## THE INFINITIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS

- 904 The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes used in exclamations and exclamatory questions.

Tē hoc nōn vidēre!

*(The idea) that you did not see this!*

Mātrēm mortuam esse?

*Mother dead?*

## HISTORICAL INFINITIVE

- 905 The present infinitive is sometimes used for vividness in narration instead of the imperfect indicative. The subject is in the nominative. This infinitive regularly occurs in a series of two or more verbs; rarely in one single verb.

Hostēs ex omnibus partibus impetum facere; tēla con-  
jicere.

*The enemy were attacking from all sides; they were  
hurling darts.*

## THE INFINITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES

- 906 The infinitive is used in poetry to complete the meaning of many adjectives WHICH DO NOT TAKE THE INFINITIVE IN PROSE. (Parātus, a, um, *ready*, and assuētus, a, um, *accustomed*, are used with the infinitive in good prose.)

Audāx omnia perpeti

*Bold to endure everything*



## THE PARTICIPLE

- 907 1. The participle is a verbal adjective.  
 As a VERB it has VOICE AND TENSE, takes OBJECTS, both direct and indirect, and is MODIFIED by adverbs and adverbial phrases.  
 As an ADJECTIVE it modifies nouns or noun-equivalents and follows the regular rule for agreement of adjectives, Nos. 474-478.
- 908 2. The TENSE of participles is always according to the rule: TENSE BY RELATION.
- 909 3. There are only three participles in Latin:  
 Present participle active: *laudāns, praising*  
 Future participle active: *laudātūrus, a, um, (being) about to praise*  
 Perfect participle passive: *laudātus, a, um, praised, having been praised*
- 910 Note: DEPONENT verbs alone have a perfect participle ACTIVE; *locūtus, a, um, having spoken* (NOT *having been spoken*).
- 911 4. A participle may be used to modify any noun or pronoun in any construction.
- $\overbrace{\text{Gallōs captōs interfēcit.}}$   
*He killed the captured Gauls.*
- $\overbrace{\text{Hāc rē commōtus, fūgit.}}$   
*Alarmed by this affair, he fled.*
- $\overbrace{\text{Frūmentum Gallīs captīs dedit.}}$   
*He gave grain to the captured Gauls.*

Caesar propter lēgātōs occīsōs bellum gessit.  
*Caesar because of the murdered envoys waged war.*

Militum occīsōrum virtūtem laudāvit.  
*He praised the courage of the slaughtered soldiers.*

Magna frūmentī cōpia in urbe captā erat.  
*There was a great supply of grain in the captured city.*

Haec pollicitus abiit.  
*Having promised these things, he went away.*

Rēgem profectum interfēcērunt.  
*They killed the king after he had set out (lit.: the king having set out).*

Pugnāns occīsus est.  
*He was killed (while) fighting.*

Rēgem proficīscētem interfēcērunt.  
*They killed the king as he was setting out (lit.: the king setting out).*

Moritūrus haec dixit.  
*He said these things as he was about to die (lit.: being about to die).*

Rēgem profectūrum interfēcērunt.  
*They killed the king as he was about to set out (lit.: the king being about to set out).*

## THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

912 The ablative absolute consists of:

a noun or pronoun	}	in the ablative and a	{	participle,	}	in agreement.
				adjective, or noun		

The noun or pronoun in the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE may not express the same person or thing as another noun or pronoun in the same clause; tense of the participle by relation (Nos. 885-887).

Urbe captā, Caesar pācem fēcit.

*The city having been captured, Caesar made peace.*

Caesare duce, Rōmānī hostēs vicērunt.

*Caesar (being) leader, the Romans conquered the enemy.*

Mē invītō, hoc fēcit.

*I being unwilling, he did this.*

Duce moritūrō, militēs fūgērunt.

*The leader being about to die, the soldiers fled.*

913 In the examples given above the ablative absolute is translated by the English nominative absolute. As this construction is generally avoided in English, the ablative absolute should generally be translated by other clauses and phrases. The ablative absolute is a general adverbial construction and may take the place of many different kinds of clauses and phrases. Study these examples:

Hīs dictīs, abiit.

Lit.: *These things having been said, he went away.*

Having said these things, he went away (ACTIVE English participle).

When (after) these things had been said, he went away.

Caesare absente, hostēs ad castra advēnērunt.

Lit.: Caesar being absent, the enemy arrived at the camp.

While Caesar was away, the enemy arrived at the camp.

In Caesar's absence, the enemy arrived at the camp.

Caesare absente, tamen Rōmānī nōn fūgērunt.

Lit.: Caesar being absent, the Romans nevertheless did not flee.

Although Caesar was absent, the Romans did not flee.

Eō interfectō, mīlitēs fugient.

Lit.: He having been killed, the soldiers will flee.

If he is killed, the soldiers will flee.

Tē duce, hostēs vincēmus.

Lit.: You being leader, we shall conquer the enemy.

With you as leader, we shall conquer the enemy.

Under your leadership, we shall conquer the enemy.

Led by you, we shall conquer the enemy.

- 914 To translate a perfect participle active into Latin; either a deponent verb must be used or the sentence must be changed so that the participle is passive. (Do not change the sense!)

*Having said this*, Caesar went away.

(*Having said this* is a perfect participle ACTIVE.)

1. Using a deponent:

Caesar, haec locūtus, abiit.

2. Changing into the PASSIVE:

*This having been said*, Caesar went away.

Hīs dictīs, Caesar abiit.

## RULES FOR PLACE

### WHERE?

- 915 To express place *WHERE*  
use *in* and the ablative;  
but locative<sup>1</sup> of names of towns and small islands  
and *domī, rūrī, humī*.

Nōn Rōmae sed in Galliā  
*Not at Rome but in Gaul*

### WHENCE?

- 916 To express place *FROM WHICH*  
use *ex, dē, ab* and the ablative;  
but ablative alone of names of towns and small islands  
and *domō, rūre, humō*.

Nōn solum Rōmā sed ex Italiā  
*Not only from Rome, but out of Italy*

### WHITHER?

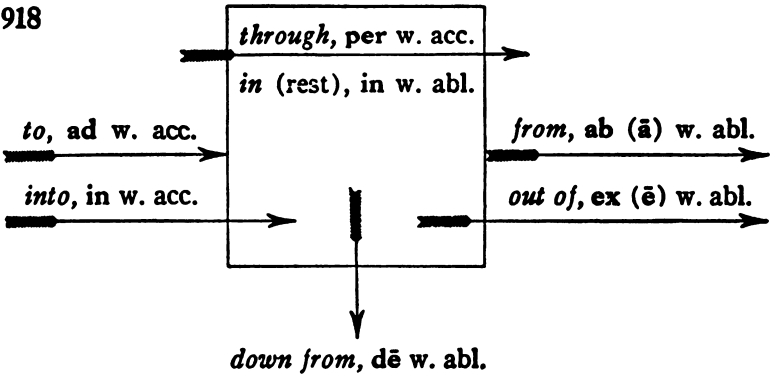
- 917 To express place *TO WHICH*  
use *ad* or *in* and the accusative;  
but accusative alone of names of towns and small  
islands  
and *domum, rūs*.

Rōmam in Italiam  
*Into Italy to Rome*

---

<sup>1</sup>See No. 30.

918



## RULES FOR TIME

### HOW LONG?

- 919 To express time *HOW LONG* use the accusative.

Duās hōrās pugnāvērunt.

*They fought*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{for two hours.} \\ \text{during two hours.} \\ \text{two hours.} \end{array} \right.$

### WHEN?

- 920 To express time *WHEN* use the ablative.

Quartō diē advēnērunt.

*The fourth day*  
*On the fourth day*  $\left. \vphantom{\begin{array}{l} \text{The fourth day} \\ \text{On the fourth day} \end{array}} \right\} \text{they arrived.}$

- 921 Note: With words not expressing time of themselves in is generally used.

*In war*

In bellō (But: Bellō Pūnicō secundō)

### WITHIN?

- 922 To express time *WITHIN WHICH* use the ablative.

Quīnque diēbus veniet.

*He will come*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in} \\ \text{within} \end{array} \right\} \text{five days.}$

## HOW LONG AGO?

- 923 To express time *HOW LONG AGO* use *abhinc* with the accusative.

Abhinc annōs decem

*Ten years ago*

## HOW LONG BEFORE OR AFTER?

- 924 To express time *HOW LONG BEFORE OR AFTER*:

1. Use ablative with *ante* or *post* as adverbs.

Multis post annis (post = adverb)

*Many years afterwards*

2. Use ablative together with *ante* or *post* as prepositions with accusative.

Paulo ante proelium (ante = preposition)

*Shortly before the battle*

Multis annis post mortem ejus (post = preposition)

*Many years after his death*

3. Use *ante* or *post* as prepositions with accusative.

Post multos annos (post = preposition)



## PREPOSITIONS

- 925** Prepositional phrases are regularly used in Latin as **ADVERBIAL** phrases **ONLY**. In English prepositional phrases are frequently used as adjectival phrases. When translating an adjectival prepositional phrase into Latin, a verb must usually be added.

*The war with the Gauls was difficult.*

*With the Gauls* is an adjectival prepositional phrase because it modifies the NOUN *war*. Hence, a verb must be added in Latin.

*Bellum cum Gallis gestum erat difficile.*

*The war waged with the Gauls was difficult.*

(*With the Gauls* is now an adverbial phrase because it modifies the VERB *waged*.)

- 926** **Note:** Prepositional phrases, however, are frequently used as adjectives in Latin:

- 927** 1. with nouns expressing an ACTION or an EMOTION.

*Meam in tē voluntātem cognōvistī.*

*You know my good will towards you.*

*Fuga ab urbe subitō fit.*

*The flight from the city happens suddenly.*

- 928** 2. in expressions of time and place.

*Post proelium in prōvinciā Caesar in Italiam contendit.*

*After the battle in the province Caesar hastened into Italy.*

- 929           3. with the phrases introduced by *sine* or *cum*.  
                   Homō sine amicis beātus esse nōn potest.  
                   *A man without friends cannot be happy.*
- 930           4. when the prepositional phrase expresses the whole  
                   (No. 692), the material, or the source [*dē*, *ex* (*ē*),  
                   *ab* (*ā*)].  
                   Ūnus ē militibus haec dixit.  
                   *One of (from) the soldiers said this.*
- 931           5. when the prepositional phrase can be enclosed be-  
                   tween the noun and its modifier.  
                   Cicerōnis dē amicitia liber  
                   *Cicero's book about friendship*  
                   (*Cicero's essay on friendship*)

*ab*,<sup>1</sup> *ā* and the ablative:

- 932           1. *from* (of place or time).  
                   *ab urbe, from the city*  
                   *ā pueritiā, from boyhood*
- 933           2. *by* (agent).  
                   *ā Caesare laudātus, praised by Caesar*

*ad* and the accusative:

- 934           1. *to, towards*.  
                   *ad urbem, to the city*
- 935           2. *near, at*.  
                   *ad Rōmam, near Rome*  
                   *ad flūmen, at the river*
- 936           3. *till, toward* (of time).  
                   *ad vesperum, till evening*

---

<sup>1</sup>*ā* only before consonants; *ab* before any letter, but rarely before *b*, *p*, *f*, *v*, *m*.

- 937 4. *for* (purpose).  
ventus ad nāvigandum idōneus, *a good breeze for sailing*
- 938 5. *about* (with numbers).  
ad ducentōs, *about 200*

***adversus* and the accusative:**

- 939 1. *opposite, towards*.  
adversus montem ire, *to go towards the mountain*
- 940 2. *against*.  
adversus hostem, *against the enemy*
- 941 3. *towards* (of feelings, etc.).  
Jūstitia etiam adversus infimōs servanda est.  
*Justice must be observed even towards the most lowly.*

- 942 ***ante* and the accusative: *before* (of place or time).**  
ante castra, *before (facing) the camp*  
ante lūcem, *before dawn*

***apud* and the accusative:**

- 943 1. *among, in the presence of*.  
Apud senātum verba fēcit.  
*He spoke in the presence of (before) the senate.*
- 944 2. *in the works of*.  
apud Cicerōnem, *in (the writings of) Cicero*
- 945 3. *at the house of*.  
apud tē, *at your house*

- 946 ***circā* and the accusative: *around, about* (of place or time).**

*circā flūmina, around rivers*

*circā eandem hōram, about the same hour*

- 947 ***circiter* and the accusative: *about*.**

*circiter merīdiem, about noon*

- 948 ***circum* and the accusative: *around* (of place).**

*circum forum, around the forum*

*circum eum, around him*

- 949 ***citrā* and the accusative; *cis* and the accusative: (*on*) *this side of*.**

*citrā Rhēnum, this side of the Rhine*

*cis Alpēs, this side of the Alps*

- 950 ***cōram* and the ablative: *in the presence of, before*.**

*cōram rēge, in the presence of the king*

***cum* and the ablative:**

- 951 1. *with* (accompaniment, union).

*tēcum, with you*

- 952 2. *with* (manner).

*cum celeritāte, with speed*

***dē* and the ablative:**

- 953 1. *about, concerning, of* (subject matter).

*Dē hāc rē locūtus sum. I spoke of this.*

- 954 2. *down from, from.*  
dē mūrō, *down from the wall*
- 955 3. *of, from (partitive).*  
paucī dē nostrīs, *a few of our men*
- 956 4. *for, owing to, according to.*  
quā dē causā, *and for this reason*  
dē mōre, *according to custom*
- 957 *ergā and the accusative: towards, for (generally of friendly feelings).*  
summa ergā nōs benevolentia, *great kindness towards us*
- ex,<sup>1</sup> ē and the ablative:*
- 958 1. *out of, from (of place, material, or time).*  
ex urbe, *out of the city*  
ex argillā factum, *made of clay*  
ex illō diē, *from that day*
- 959 2. *of (partitive).*  
ūnus ex captīvīs, *one of the captives*
- 960 *extrā and the accusative: outside (of).*  
extrā finēs, *outside the border*
- in:*
- 961 1. *with the ablative: in, on (rest).*  
in castrīs, *in the camp*  
in ponte, *on the bridge*

---

<sup>1</sup>Ē only before consonants; ex before any letter, but rarely before b, p, f, v, m.

## 2. with the accusative:

962

a. *into, onto* (motion).in Galliam, *into Gaul*in nāvēs, *onto the ships*

963

b. *for, till* (of time).Concilium in posterum diem distulit. *He put off the council till the next day.*in futūrum, *for the future*

964

c. *for, against.*amor in patriam, *patriotism*ōrātiō in Catilinam habita, *the speech against Catiline*

965

*infrā* and the accusative: *below, beneath.**infrā sīdera, beneath the stars**inter* and the accusative:

966

1. *between* (of place).inter castra et flūmen, *between the camp and the river*

967

2. *among.*Inter omnēs cōstat. *It is agreed on among all.*

968

3. *during* (time).inter bellum, *during the war*

969

*intrā* and the accusative: *within* (motion, rest, time).*intrā finēs esse, to be within the borders**tēla intrā mūnitiōnēs conjicere, to hurl darts within the defense works**intrā decem diēs, within ten days*

**970**     *jūxtā* and the accusative: *near*.

*jūxtā arborem, near a tree*

*ob* and the accusative:

**971**     1. *before* (of place).

*ob oculōs versārī, to keep (be) before one's eyes*

**972**     2. *for, on account of*.

*ob hanc causam, for (on account of) this reason*

**973**     *penes* and the accusative: *in the power of, under the control of*.

*penes tē, in your power*

*per* and the accusative:

**974**     1. *through, throughout* (of place or time).

*per prōvinciam, through the province*

*per orbem terrārum, throughout the world*

*per hiemem, throughout (during) the winter*

**975**     2. *through, by* (intermediate agent).

*per explōrātōrēs, through scouts*

*per nuntium, by a messenger*

**976**     3. *through* (means).

*per litterās cognōscere, to learn by means of a letter*

**977**     4. *owing to* (cause).

*Per annī tempus iter facere nōn possum. Owing to the season I cannot travel.*

**978**     5. *by* (in oaths).

*Per deōs jūrō. I swear by the gods.*

**post and the accusative:**

979

- 1.
- behind*
- (of place).

post castra, *behind the camp*

980

- 2.
- after*
- (of time).

post proelium, *after the battle***prae and the ablative:**

981

- 1.
- before*
- (in preference to).

prae omnibus, *before all*

982

- 2.
- for*
- (preventing cause).

Prae timōre loquī nōn potuit. *He could not speak for fear.*

983

- 3.
- in comparison with*
- .

Galliis prae magnitudine corporum suorum brevitās nostra contemptū est. *Our small stature is contemptible to the Gauls in comparison with their own size.***praeter and the accusative:**

984

- 1.
- past, by, beyond*
- (of place).

praeter castra ire, *to go by the camp*

985

- 2.
- contrary to, beyond, except*
- .

praeter cōsuētūdinem, *contrary to custom*praeter modum, *beyond measure*praeter tē nēmō, *no one except you***prō and the ablative:**

986

- 1.
- before, in front of*
- (with back towards).

prō castris collocātus, *stationed before the camp*

987

- 2.
- on behalf of*
- .

prō patriā morī, *to die for one's country*



- 988 3. *instead of, in place of.*  
prō parente, *instead of a father*
- 989 4. *in return for.*  
prō beneficiis, *in return for favors*
- 990 5. *in accordance with, in proportion to, in view of.*  
prō tuā benevolentiā, *in accordance with your kindness*
- 991 *prope* and the accusative: *near (to).*  
prope mūrū, *near the wall*
- 992 *propter* and the accusative: *on account of, because of.*  
propter timōrem, *because of fear*
- secundum* and the accusative:
- 993 1. *along.*  
secundum flūmen, *along the river*
- 994 2. *after (following).*  
secundum proelium, *after the battle*
- 995 3. *according to.*  
secundum rei nātūrā, *according to the nature of the thing*
- 996 *sine* and the ablative: *without.*  
sine veste, *without a garment*  
sine spē, *without hope*

**sub:****1. with the ablative:**

997

- a.
- under*
- (place where, rest).

sub monte cōsidere, *to encamp at the foot of the mountain*sub arbore, *under a tree*

998

- b.
- towards*
- (of time).

sub vespere, *towards evening***2. with the accusative:**

999

- a.
- under*
- (motion).

sub jugum mittere, *to send under the yoke*sub montem succedere, *to come to the foot of the mountain*

1000

- b.
- at*
- (time).

sub noctem, *at (just before) nightfall*

1001

**super and the accusative: above** (motion, rest).super rūpem stāre, *to stand above the cliff*super terram volāre, *to fly above the earth*

1002

**suprā and the accusative: above, beyond.**suprā sīdera, *above the stars*

1003

**tenus** (post-positive) and the ablative: *as far as*.flūmine tenus, *as far as the river*

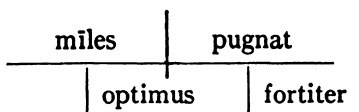
**1004**     *trāns* and the accusative: *across* (motion, rest).

Caesar exercitum trāns Rhēnum dūxit. *Caesar led his army across the Rhine.*

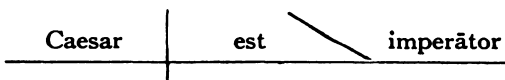
Germānī trāns Rhēnum incolunt. *The Germans dwell across the Rhine.*

## METHOD OF DIAGRAMMING

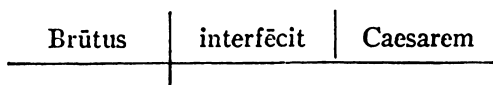
- 1005**     1. Simple sentence: Mīles optimus fortiter pugnat.



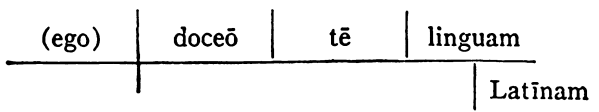
- 1006**     2. Predicate noun or adjective: Caesar est imperātor.



- 1007**     3. Direct object: Brūtus Caesarem interfēcit.

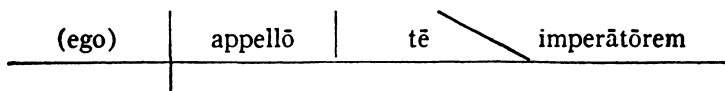


- 1008**     4. Two accusative objects: Tē linguam Latīnam doceō.

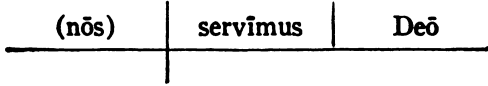


- 1009**     5. Accusative object and predicate accusative:

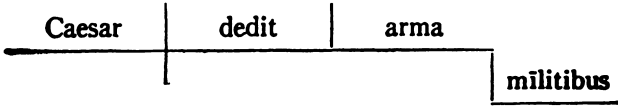
Tē imperātōrem appellō.



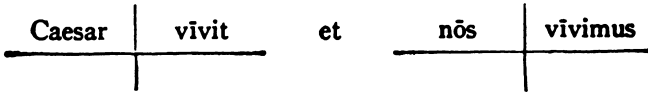
- 1010 6. Dative (genitive, ablative) object: Deō servīmus.



- 1011 7. Indirect object: Caesar arma militibus dedit.



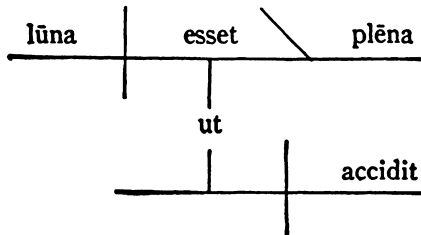
- 1012 8. Compound sentence: Caesar vīvit et nōs vīvimus.



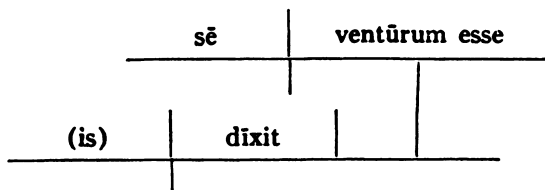
9. Complex sentences:

a. Noun clauses

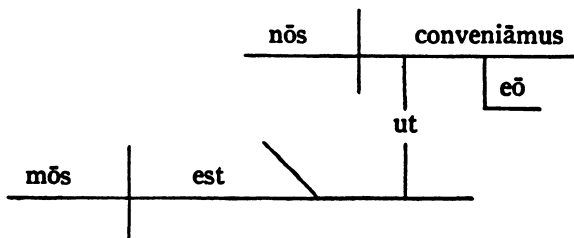
- 1013 1. *As subject*: Accidit ut lūna esset plēna.



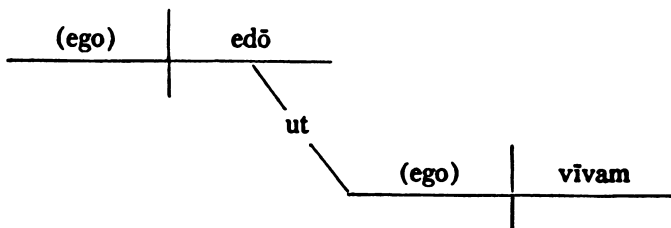
1014

2. *As object*: Dīxit sē ventūrum esse.

1015

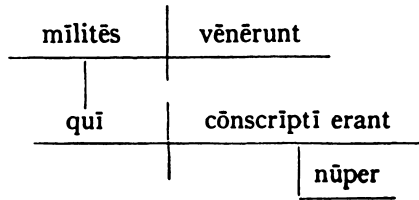
3. *As predicate noun*: Mōs est ut nōs eō conveniāmus.

1016

b. *Adverb clauses*: Edō ut vīvam.

1017

c. Adjective clauses: Militēs quī nūper cōscriptī  
erant vēnērunt.







## APPENDIX

### PRONUNCIATION

#### 1018 The Roman System.

##### Vowels: *Long*

*ā* as in *father* ;  
*ē* as in *they* :  
 (but without the faint  
*i* sound at the end) ;  
*ī* as in *machine* ;  
*ō* as in *no* :  
 (but without the faint  
*u* sound at the end) ;  
*ū* as in *rule*.  
*y* (in borrowed Greek words) like German *ü* or French *u*.

##### *Short*

*a* as in *facility* ;  
*e* as in *get* ;  
  
*i* as in *fit* ;  
*o* as in *obey* ;  
  
*u* as in *put*.

##### Diphthongs :

<i>ae</i> like <i>ai</i> in <i>aisle</i> ;	<i>ei</i> like <i>ei</i> in <i>feign</i> ;
<i>oe</i> like <i>oi</i> in <i>foil</i> ;	<i>eu</i> like <i>ew</i> in <i>dew</i> ;
<i>au</i> like <i>ou</i> in <i>out</i> ;	<i>ui</i> like <i>we</i> .

##### Consonants :

Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English, but

<i>c</i> always as in <i>cat</i> ;	<i>s</i> always as in <i>this</i> ;
<i>g</i> always as in <i>gun</i> ;	<i>su</i> as in <i>suave</i> ;
<i>ngu</i> as in <i>unguent</i> ;	<i>t</i> always as in <i>tin</i> ;
<i>qu</i> as in <i>quit</i> ;	<i>x</i> always as in <i>extra</i> ;
<i>r</i> always as in <i>three</i> ;	<i>z</i> like <i>dz</i> in <i>adze</i> ;
<i>j</i> (consonantal <i>i</i> ) like <i>y</i> in <i>yet</i> ;	
<i>v</i> (consonantal <i>u</i> ) like <i>w</i> in <i>well</i> ;	
<i>bs</i> and <i>bt</i> like English <i>ps</i> and <i>pt</i> .	

**Note:** Double consonants are both pronounced but without a break, like the *ll* in English *tailless*. Thus:  
bel-lum

## 1019 The Italian System.

### Vowels:

In general as in the Roman pronunciation. However, some prefer to give all the vowels the *quality* of long vowels and to pronounce the short vowels more quickly.

### Diphthongs:

As in the Roman pronunciation except:

ae and oe like the *e* in *they*.

### Consonants:

Most of the consonants are pronounced as in English, but  
c before *e, i, ae, oe* like the *ch* in *charity*;

ch before *e* or *i* like *k*;

cc before *e* or *i* like the *tch* in *match*;

sc before *e* or *i* like the *sh* in *she*;

g before *e, i, ae, oe* like the *j* in *just*;

gn like the *ni* in *onion*;

gg before *e* or *i* like the *dj* in *adjust*;

gh before *e* or *i* like the *g* in *game*;

gl before *i* like the *ll* in *million*;

h is silent, but between two vowels it is like English *k*;

r as in *three* (*i. e.*, trilled);

t before *i* and a vowel (except after *s, t, x*) = *ts*;

x (in words beginning *ex-* followed by a vowel, *h*, or *s*) = *gs*; otherwise *ks*.

**Note:** Double consonants are both pronounced but without a break like the *ll* in English *tailless*.

## NOTES ON VERBS

## 1020 Irregular Imperatives.

dicō	} have	dic	} in the second person singular imperative active.
dūcō		dūc	
faciō		fac	
ferō		fer	

## 1021 Irregular Future Participles Active.

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, 4, *intr.*, I arise:

oritūrus, a, um

morior, morī, mortuus sum, 3, *intr.*, I die:

moritūrus, a, um

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, 3, *intr.*, I am born:

nāscitūrus, a, um

ruō, ruere, ruī, rutus, 3, *intr.*, I fall, I rush:

ruitūrus, a, um

fruor, fruī, fructus sum, 3, *intr.*, I enjoy:

fruitūrus, a, um

pariō, parere, peperī, partus, 3, *tr.*, I bring forth:

paritūrus, a, um

sonō, sonāre, sonuī, sonitus, 1, *intr.*, I sound:

sonātūrus, a, um

secō, secāre, secuī, sectus, 1, *tr.*, I cut:

secātūrus, a, um

juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtus, 1, *tr.*, I help:

jūvātūrus, a, um (but: adjūtūrus, a, um)

lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautus, 1, *tr.*, I wash:

lavātūrus, a, um

**1022 Alternate Endings.** The following are common :

**-ēre** for **-ērunt** in the third person plural perfect indicative active.

**-re** for **-ris** in the second person singular of all passive forms.

Cicero prefers **-ris** in the present indicative, but **-re** in the future indicative, present subjunctive, imperfect indicative, and imperfect subjunctive.

**Shortened Forms.****1023** 1. Forms of the perfect tenses are sometimes shortened.

amāstī	}	for	amāvistī
dīxtī			dīxistī
amārunt			amāvērunt
amārō			amāverō
amārim			amāverim
audisse			audīvisse
audissem			audīvissem
dēlērunt			dēlēvērunt
dēlēsem			dēlēvissem, <i>etc.</i>

**1024** 2. Perfect stems in *iv* sometimes drop the *v* and shorten the *i*.

audierat	}	for	audīverat
petierat			petīverat, <i>etc.</i>

**1025** **Dō.** The *a* is short in all forms of **dō, dare, dedī, datus, I, tr., give**, except in **dā** (the imperative) and in **dās** (second person singular present indicative active).

## INDEX

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- ab** (ā), 752, 764, 768, 916, 932-933  
**abbinc**, 923  
**Ablative**, 762-789  
     absolute, 912-914  
     accompaniment, 772-774  
     agent, 764  
     cause, 781-784  
     comparison, 777-780  
     degree of difference, 771  
     description, 697-699, 762  
     manner, 769  
     means, 765  
     object, 785, 1010  
     place, 915-916  
     position of, 466  
     price, 788-789  
     respect, 770  
     separation, 766-768  
     time, 920-922, 924  
     with adjectives, 766, 775-776  
     with prepositions, 932-933, 950-956, 958-959, 961, 981-983, 986-990, 996-998, 1003  
*about*, 938, 946-947, 953  
*above*, 1001-1002  
**ac** (atque), 608-610  
     ae ai, 611  
**Accent**, 9-10  
**accidit**, 638, 659  
**Accompaniment**, ablative of, 772-774  
*according to*, 956, 995  
**Accusative**, 745-761  
     cognate, 758  
     direct object, 745, 1007  
     double, 746-754, 1008-1009  
     extent of space and time, 761, 919, 923-924  
     in exclamations, 759  
     of neuter pronouns and adjectives, 755-757  
     place to which, 917  
     predicate, 746, 1009  
     specification, 760  
     subject of infinitive, 893, 897, 904  
     time, 761, 919, 923-924  
     with infinitive, 579, 3; 897-904  
     with prepositions, 934-949, 957, 960, 962-980, 984-985, 991-995, 999-1002, 1004  
**ācer**, 80, 94-95  
*across*, 1004  
**Active voice**, 144, 160-239, 312-321  
**ad**, 712, 872, 917, 934-938  
**adeō**, 551  
**Adjective clauses**, 615-636, 1017  
**Adjectives**, 72-102, 845-859  
     ablative with, 766, 775-776  
     agreement, 474-478, 808-811, 865, 888  
     attributive, 477-478, 866-867, 869  
     comparison, 89-102, 853-855  
     dative with, 742-743  
     declension, 72-88, 101-102  
     demonstrative, 133-137, 464, 794  
     genitive with, 687-688, 695, 722-723  
     gerundive as, 865-869, 878-884  
     infinitive after, 890, 906  
     intensive, 138, 808-810  
     interrogative, 141, 464, 503, 660  
     irregular, 84-88  
     of quantity, 112-122, 464, 687, 700-701, 705, 755  
     participles used as, 309, 907, 911  
     position of, 464-465  
     possessive, 125, 131-132, 710, 800, 802  
     predicate, 474-476, 878, 894, 900, 1006  
     relative, 139, 615

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- superlative, 92-102, 620, 856-859  
 supine with, 863  
 used as nouns, 693, 845-848  
 used for English adverbs, 849  
 verbal, 865-884, 907-914
- admoneō**, genitive with, 719
- Adverbial clauses**, 546-614, 1016
- Adverbs**, 103-111  
 comparison, 109-111  
 formation, 103-108  
 genitive with, 690-691  
 interrogative, 503  
 numerical, 112, 1; 118  
 position of, 466  
 relative, 623
- Adversative clauses**, 595-598, 628
- adversus**, 939-941
- aestimō**, genitive with, 702
- after**, 556, 980, 994
- against**, 940, 964
- Agent**  
 ablative, 764  
 dative, 732-734, 882  
 intermediate, 975  
 non-living, 765
- ager**, declension, 40, 42
- ago**, 923
- Agreement**, 470-479  
 appositive, 473, 679  
 attributive adjective, 477-478  
 finite verb, 470-472  
 gerundive, 865, 877, 879, 883-884  
 participle, 899, 907, 911-912  
 predicate adjective, 474-476, 894, 900  
 predicate noun, 473, 894  
 pronoun, 479, 616, 619, 621
- ajō**, conjugation, 456-458
- aliquis**, 815
- aliquot**, 817
- alius**, 85-86, 825, 828  
*alius . . . alius*, 822, 839
- along*, 993
- Alphabet**, 1
- alter**, 87, 823-824, 826-827  
*alter . . . alter*, 839
- Alternate endings**, 1022
- although*, 595-598
- ambo**, 838
- among*, 943, 967
- an**, 505, 507-508  
*annōn*, 505, 661
- ante**, 924, 942
- antequam**; **anteāquam**, 564-565
- anyone*; *any*, 841-844
- Appositive**, 473, 620, 679, 682
- aptus**, 635
- apud**, 943-945
- around*, 946, 948
- as far as*, 631-632, 1003
- as long as*, 569-571, 1003
- as soon as*, 556
- assis**, 703
- assuētus**, infinitive with, 906
- at*, 935, 1000  
*at the house of*, 945
- atque**. *See* **ac**
- Attributive adjectives**, 477-478  
 gerundive *as*, 866-867, 869-877
- audāx**, comparison, 92
- audeō**, 345, 892
- audiō**, conjugation, pages 45, 47, 49, 51,  
 53-54, 57, 59, 61, 63, 65
- because*, 572-576  
*because of*, 580, 992
- before*  
 conjunction, 564-565  
 preposition, 942, 950, 971, 981, 986
- behind*, 979
- bellum**, declension, 37
- below*, 965
- bene**, comparison, 111

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- beneath*, 965  
*between*, 966  
*beyond*, 984-985, 1002  
*bonus*, comparison, 99  
*by*, 933, 975, 978, 984
- capīō*, conjugation, 312-330  
 Cardinal numerals, 112, 114-122  
 Case, 22, 28-30, 677-789  
   ablative, 762-789  
   accusative, 29, 39, 68, 745-761  
   dative, 71, 725-744  
   genitive, 59-61, 71, 680-724  
   locative, 30, 67, 915  
   nominative, 677, 679  
   vocative, 28, 36, 44, 678  
 Causal clauses, 572-579, 627  
 Cause, ablative of, 781-784  
*caveō*, 516, 645  
*cēdō*, dative with, 739-740  
*cēlō*, double accusative, 751  
*centum*, 117  
*certus*, comparison, 92, 102  
*cēterī*, 829  
 Characteristic clauses, 633-636, 654  
 Charge, genitive of, 717  
*circā*, 946  
*circiter*, 947  
*circum*, 948  
*cis*, 949  
*citrā*, 949  
 Clauses  
   adjective, 615-636, 1017  
   adverbial, 546-614, 1016  
   adversative, 595-598, 628  
   causal, 572-579, 627  
   characteristic, 633-636, 654  
   comparative, 599-612  
   concessive, 467, 595-598  
   conditional; 467, 581-594, 611-612, 614, 629, 669-674  
   *cum*, 542, 559-563, 578, 596  
   limiting relative, 630-632  
   main, 498-519, 1005-1012  
   noun, 637-676, 898, 1013-1015  
   position of, 467-468  
   purpose, 468, 546-549, 625, 637, 639  
   *quīn*, 650-654  
   *quod*, 572-576, 579, 657-659  
   *quōminus*, 646-649  
   relative, 615-636  
   result, 467, 534, 550-555, 626, 637-638, 653  
   *sī*, 581-593, 600, 669  
   subordinate, 520-676, 1013-1017  
   temporal, 467, 556-571  
   tenses in, 480-497, 520-676  
*coepī*, 430-435, 449-450, 892  
 Cognate accusative, 758  
 Commands, 514-517  
*commonefaciō*, genitive with, 719  
*commoneō*, genitive with, 719  
 Comparative adjectives  
   declension of, 101  
   formation of, 91, 95, 97, 99-100  
   meaning, 93, 853-855  
 Comparative adverbs, 109, 111  
 Comparative clauses, 599-612  
 Comparison  
   ablative of, 777-780  
   clauses of, 599-612  
   of adjectives, 89-102  
   of adverbs, 109-111  
 Complex sentences, 546-676, 1013-1017  
 Compound numerals, 119-122  
 Compound sentence, diagram of, 1012  
 Compound subject, agreement with, 471-472, 475-476  
 Compound verbs, 397, 638, 738, 744  
*concerning*, 953  
 Concessive clauses, 467, 595-598  
 Concessive subjunctive, 519

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- Conditional clauses (sentences),** 467,  
581-594, 611-612, 614, 629, 669-674  
**contrary-to-fact,** 583, 590-592, 612,  
614, 674  
**expressing a wish,** 594  
**in indirect discourse,** 669-674  
**indicative in,** 581, 584-591  
**mixed,** 593  
**negatives in,** 584-586, 588  
**nothing implied,** 581, 584-589  
**of comparison,** 611-612  
**relative,** 629  
**should-would,** 582  
**with gerundive and future participle,**  
590  
**with possum, dēbeō, oportet,** 591  
**cōnficiō, noun clause after,** 638  
**Conjugation,** 150, 159  
**ajō,** 456-458  
**coepti,** 430-435, 449-450  
**deponent verbs,** 334-344  
**eō,** 362-365, 375-380, 397  
**ferō,** 369-374, 386-396  
**fiō,** 366-368, 381-385  
**first,** pages 44, 46, 48, 50, 52, 56, 58,  
60, 62, 64, 72-74  
**fourth,** pages 45, 47, 49, 51, 53-54, 57,  
59, 61, 63, 65, 72-74  
**inquam,** 452-455  
**-iō verbs of the third,** 311-330, 334-  
344  
**mālō,** 398, 408-410, 425-429  
**meminī,** 436-442  
**nōlō,** 398, 405-407, 419, 424  
**ōdī,** 443-448, 451  
**possum,** 398-401, 411-413  
**quaesō,** 459  
**regular,** 151, 159-306  
**second,** pages 45, 47, 49, 51, 53-54, 57,  
59, 61, 63, 65, 72-74  
**semi-deponent,** 345  
**sum,** 346-361  
**third, regular,** pages 45, 47, 49, 51, 53-  
54, 57, 59, 61, 63, 65, 72-74  
**third in -iō,** 311-330, 334-344  
**volō,** 402-404, 414-418  
**cōnor, infinitive with,** 892  
**Consonants, pronunciation,** 5, 1018-1019  
**contendō, infinitive with,** 892  
**contentus, ablative with,** 776  
**Continental pronunciation,** 2-13  
**Contraction, in perfect active,** 1024  
**contrary to,** 985  
**Contrary-to-fact conditions,** 583, 590-  
592, 612, 614, 674  
**convenit, infinitive with,** 891  
**cōram,** 950  
**cornū, declension,** 68  
**crēditur, infinitive with,** 903  
**cum**  
**conjunction,** 542, 559-563, 578, 596  
**preposition,** 769, 772-773, 951, 952  
**cum inversum,** 562  
**cum primum,** 556  
**cupiō, infinitive with,** 640; 892; 893, 1  
**cūrō, with gerundive,** 883-884  
**Dative, 725-744**  
**agency,** 732-734, 882  
**double,** 731  
**ethical,** 727  
**indirect object,** 736-737, 1011  
**limit of motion,** 735  
**possession,** 725  
**purpose,** 729-730  
**reference,** 726-728  
**with adjectives,** 742-743  
**with verbs,** 738-741, 744, 1010  
**dē,** 692, 766, 916, 953-956  
**dē vī,** 718  
**dēbeō,** 591, 673, 892  
**dēcernō,** 639, 892



References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- Declension, 23**  
 adjectives, 72-88, 101-102  
   comparative, 101  
   demonstrative, 133-137  
   first and second declensions, 72-76  
   intensive, 138  
   interrogative, 141  
   irregular, 84-88  
   possessive, 126, 131  
   relative, 139  
   superlative, 102  
   third declension, 77-83  
 gerund, 212, 228-230, 319  
 nouns, 25-71  
   fifth declension, 69-71  
   first declension, 31-33  
   fourth declension, 65-68  
   second declension, 34-44  
   third declension, 45-64  
 numerals, 114-117  
 participles, 307, 310  
 pronouns, 123-141  
   demonstrative, 133-137  
   intensive, 138  
   interrogative, 140  
   personal, 123-124, 127-128  
   possessive, 126, 131  
   relative, 139
- Degree of difference, ablative of, 771**
- Deliberative questions, 509-510**
- Demonstrative adjectives and pronouns, 133-137, 464, 658, 790-799**
- Deponent verbs, 334-344**  
 conjugation, 335-344  
 gerundive, 875-876  
 object of, 785-787  
 perfect participle active, 910  
 semi-deponent, 345
- Description**  
 ablative of, 697-699, 762  
 genitive of, 695-696, 699
- Descriptive genitive, 695-696, 699**
- dēterior, comparison, 100**
- dēterreō, noun clause after, 645**
- Deus, declension, 44**
- Diagramming, 1005-1017**
- dicō, 1020**
- diēs, 70-71**
- Difference, ablative of degree of, 771**
- difficilis, superlative, 96**
- dignus, 635, 776**
- diligēns, 82, 92**
- Diphthongs, pronunciation of, 4, 1018-1019**
- Direct object, 745, 1007**
- Direct questions, 502-508**
- Direct reflexive, 803**
- discō, infinitive with, 892**
- Discourse, indirect, 663-676**
- displaceō, dative with, 740**
- dissimilis, superlative, 96**
- Distributive numerals, 118**
- diū, comparison, 111**
- dō, 883-884, 1025**
- doceō, infinitive with, 892**
- doleō, 579, 1**
- domus**  
 declension, 67  
 in expressions of place, 915-917  
 locative, 30, 67, 915
- dōnec, 564**
- Double accusative, 746-754, 1008-1009**
- Double antecedent, 616**
- Double dative, 731**
- Double questions, 504-505**
- down from, 918, 954**
- dubitō, 651, 655-656, 892**
- dubium nōn est, 651**
- dubius, comparison, 98**
- ducentī, declension, 117**
- dūcō, 702, 1020**
- dum, 564, 569-570, 594**

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- dummodo**, 594  
**duo**, declension, 115  
*during*, 968
- ē**. *See ex*  
*each*, 831-840  
**ecquis**, 842  
**efficiō**, noun clause after, 638  
**ego**, 123, 800, 877  
 Emotion, expressions of, 579, 714, 782, 893, 927  
 Endings  
     alternate, 1022  
     case in nouns, 23-30; 36; 44; 59-63; 64, 1; 71  
     person in verbs, 160-161, 240-242, 1022  
**eō**, conjugation, 362-365, 375-380, 397  
**ergā**, 957  
**esse** (*est*). *See sum*  
 Ethical dative, 727  
**etiamsi**, 598  
**etsi**, 598  
**ex** (*ē*), 692, 752, 768, 916, 958-959  
*except*, 985  
 Exclamations, 759, 904  
 Explanatory genitive, 681-682  
 Extent of space and time, 761, 919, 923-924  
**exterior**, comparison, 100  
**extrā**, 960  
**extrēmus**, 100
- facilis**, comparison, 96-97, 110  
**faciō**  
     compounds of, 638  
     **facere nōn possum quīn**, 651  
     **fiō**, 366-368, 381-385, 638, 651  
     genitive with, 702  
     imperative, 1020  
 Fearing, verbs of, 642-644  
**ferō**, conjugation, 369-374, 386-396, 1020
- fidō**, 345  
 Fifth declension, 69-71  
 Finite verb, agreement of, 470-472  
**fiō**, conjugation, 366-368, 381-385  
     **fieri potest**, 638, 651  
 First and second declension adjectives, 72-76  
 First and second persons, pronouns of, 123-124, 800  
 First conjugation, pages 44, 46, 48, 50, 52, 56, 58, 60, 62, 64, 72-74  
 First declension, 31-33  
**floccī**, 703  
**flūmen**, declension, 64  
*for*, 937, 956-957, 963-964, 972, 982  
 Formation  
     of adverbs, 103-108  
     of comparatives and superlatives, 89-100, 109-111  
 Fourth conjugation, pages 45, 47, 49, 51, 53-54, 57, 59, 61, 63, 65, 72-74  
 Fourth declension, 65-68  
**frētus**, ablative with, 776  
*from*, 918, 932, 954, 955, 958  
**fruor**, 785-787, 875, 1021  
**fungor**, 785-787, 875  
 Future perfect tense, 496-497  
 Future tense  
     indicative, 489-491, 545  
     infinitive, 158, 670-671, 673, 887, 899  
     participle, 156, 534, 590, 887, 909, 1021
- gaudeō**, 345, 579, 782  
 Gender, 15-18, 474-479  
     agreement of adjectives and pronouns, 474-479  
     fifth declension, 70  
     first declension, 32-33  
     fourth declension, 66, 68  
     second declension, 35, 38  
     third declension, 46-52

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- Genitive, 680-724**  
 descriptive, 695-696, 699  
 explanatory, 681-682  
 objective, 684-685  
 of indefinite value, 700-705  
 of price, 705  
 of the charge, 717  
 partitive, 686-694  
 plural of third declension, 59-63; 64, 1  
 possessive, 680, 811  
 subjective, 683  
 with adjectives, 687-688, 695, 722-723  
 with adverbs, 690-691  
 with nouns, 681-687, 695-696  
 with present participle, 724  
 with verbs, 700-721
- Gerund, 864, 873-874**
- Gerundive, 865-884**  
 after *ad* or *causā*, 872  
 agreement of, 865, 877, 879, 883-884  
 as attributive adjective, 866-867, 869  
 as predicate adjective, 878-884  
 dative of agency with, 882  
 deponent verbs in, 875-876  
 for gerund, 870-872, 875-877  
 impersonal use of, 881  
 in conditional sentences, 590  
 of *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *utor*, 875  
 of obligation or necessity, 878-882  
 to express purpose, 872  
 with reflexive pronouns, 877
- gracilis**, superlative, 96
- granted that**, 519, 596-597
- gravior**, declension, 101
- gravis**, 78, 92, 101
- habeō**, genitive with, 702
- hic**, 133, 791-795
- Historical infinitive**, 499, 905
- Historical perfect**, 492
- Historical present**, 541, 562
- Hortatory subjunctive**, 518
- hortor**, 334-344, 639
- humilis**, superlative, 96
- humus**, 915-916
- i-stems**, third declension, 58-63; 64, 1
- idem**, 137, 813-814  
     *idem* . . . *ac* (*atque*), 608  
     *idem* . . . *quī*, 608-609
- idōneus**, 635
- ille**, 134, 791-798
- impediō**, noun clause after, 645
- Imperative mood**, 146  
     in commands, 515  
     irregular, 1020  
     position, 462
- Imperfect tense**  
     indicative, 486-488, 499, 544, 562  
     subjunctive, 191-192, 500, 592, 612, 671-672
- imperō**, 639, 739-740
- Impersonal verbs**, 331-333, 638, 641, 659, 709, 714-716, 891
- impetrō**, noun clause after, 639
- Implied indirect discourse**, 675-676
- īmus**, 100, 851
- in**  
     with ablative, 915, 921, 961  
     with accusative, 917, 962-964
- in**, 918, 961  
     *in accordance with*, 990  
     *in comparison with*, 983  
     *in front of*, 986  
     *in place of*, 988  
     *in preference to*, 981  
     *in proportion to*, 990  
     *in return for*, 989  
     *in the power of*, 973  
     *in the presence of*, 943, 950  
     *in the works of*, 944  
     *in view of*, 990

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- incipiō**, infinitive with, 892  
**Indefinite value**, genitive of, 700-705  
**Indicative mood**, 146  
     in main clauses, 498, 503-505  
     in subordinate clauses, 556-560, 562, 564, 569-572, 575, 577, 579, 581, 584-591, 595, 599, 615, 623, 632, 657  
     tenses of, 480-497, 521, 524-526, 542-545  
**indignus**, 635, 776  
**Indirect discourse**, 663-676  
     conditional sentences in, 669-674  
     implied, 675-676  
     rhetorical questions in, 666  
     subordinate clauses in, 665-676  
**Indirect object**, 736-737, 1011  
**Indirect question**, 534, 655, 660-662  
**Indirect reflexive**, 804-805, 877  
**inferior**, comparison, 100  
**infirmus**, 100, 851  
**Infinitive**, 885-906  
     accusative with, 640, 664, 666, 897-904  
     after adjectives, 890, 906  
     future, 158, 335, 670-671, 673, 887, 899  
     historical, 499, 905  
     in exclamations, 904  
     in indirect discourse, 664, 666, 675  
     in noun constructions, 889-903  
     perfect, 539, 886, 899  
     present, 151, 499, 885, 896, 905  
     subject of, 893, 897, 904  
     tenses of, 885-887, 896-897, 905  
     with verbs, 640, 649, 891-892, 895, 897, 901-903  
**infrā**, 965  
**inquam**, conjugation, 452-455  
*instead of*, 988  
**integer**, declension, 76  
**Intensive adjective and pronoun**, 138, 808-812  
**inter**, 966-968  
**interest**, genitive with, 709-713  
**interior**, 100, 851  
**Intermediate agent**, 975  
**Interrogative adjective**, 141, 464, 503, 660  
**Interrogative adverb**, 503  
**Interrogative pronoun**, 140, 503, 660  
**intimus**, 100, 851  
*into*, 918, 962  
**intrā**, 969  
**Intransitive verbs**, 739-741, 755-756, 758, 785-787, 875, 881  
**-iō verbs**, third conjugation, 311-330, 334-344  
**ipse**, 138, 808-812  
**Irregular adjectives**, 84-88  
**Irregular comparison**, 99-100, 111  
**Irregular imperatives**, 1020  
**Irregular verbs**, 346-459  
**is**  
     declension, 128  
     demonstrative, 135, 791-794  
     personal, 128-130, 796-797  
     syntax, 617, 791-794, 796-797  
**iste**, 136, 791-794, 799  
**ita**, 551  
     **ita fit**, 638  
     **ita . . . quemadmodum**, 601  
**Italian system of pronunciation**, 1019  
**jubeō**, 640; 893, 1; 895  
**Jussive subjunctive**, 514, 516-517  
**juvātūrus**, 1021  
**juvenis**, comparison, 99  
**jūxtā**, 970  
**laetor**, 579, 1  
**lātē**, comparison, 110  
**laudō**, conjugation, pages 44, 46, 48, 50, 52, 56, 58, 60, 62, 64  
**lavātūrus**, 1021  
**lēx**, declension, 57

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- licet**  
     conjunction, 597  
     verb, 333, 640-641, 891  
**Limit of motion, dative of, 735**  
**Limiting clauses, 630-632**  
**Locative, 30, 67, 915**
- magnōpere, comparison, 111**  
**magnus, 72, 99**  
     **magnī, 701**  
**Main clauses, 498-519, 1005-1012**  
**male, comparison, 111**  
**mālō**  
     conjugation, 398, 408-410, 425-429  
     infinitive with, 640; 892; 893, 1  
**malus, comparison, 99**  
**Manner, ablative of, 769**  
**maximī, 701**  
**Meaning**  
     of comparative adjectives, 93, 853-855  
     of indicative tenses, 480-497, 521  
     of subjunctive, 188-193, 522  
     of superlative adjectives, 93, 856  
**Means, ablative of, 765**  
**medius, 851**  
**meminī**  
     conjugation, 436-442  
     genitive with, 706-707  
**meus, 125-126, 800**  
     vocative, 28  
**mille; milia, declension, 117**  
**minimī, 701**  
**minōris, 701, 705, 789**  
**miser, 75, 94-95**  
**miseret, 714-716**  
**mittō, conjugation, pages 45, 47, 49, 51,**  
     53-54, 57, 59, 61, 63, 65  
**modo, 594**  
**mōlior, conjugation, 334-344**  
**moneō, conjugation, pages 45, 47, 49,**  
     51, 53-54, 57, 59, 61, 63, 65
- Mood, 146**  
     imperative, 462, 515, 1020  
     indicative, 480-498, 521  
     subjunctive, 188-193, 500-501, 510-  
         514, 516-519, 522  
**moritūrus, 1021**  
**multus, 99, 852**  
     **multum, comparison, 111**
- nāscor, 768, 1021**  
**nātū maximus; minimus, 99**  
**nē, 511-514, 516-519, 546-547, 596, 637,**  
     642, 645, 647-649  
     **nē quid; nē quis, 549**  
     **nē umquam, 549**  
**-ne, 503, 505, 661**  
**near, 935, 970, 991**  
**necesse est, 641, 891**  
**necne, 661**  
**nēcubi, 549**  
**Negative commands, 516**  
**nēmō, with partitive genitive, 689**  
**nesciōquī; nesciōquis, 819**  
**neuter, declension, 88**  
**Neuter adjectives and pronouns, 687,**  
     700-701, 705, 716, 755-757, 788, 890  
**Neuter nouns**  
     fourth declension, 68  
     infinitive as, 888  
     **mīlia, 117**  
     second declension, 37-39  
     third declension, 64  
**nēve (neu), 548**  
**nihilī, 703**  
**nimis, with partitive genitive, 690**  
**nisi, 542, 584**  
**noceō, dative with, 739-740**  
**nōlō**  
     conjugation, 398, 405-407, 419-424  
     imperative, 516  
     with infinitive, 516; 640; 892; 893, 1

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- Nominative case, 677, 679  
**nōn dubitō**, 651  
**nōn multum abest quīn**, 651  
**nōn quō; nōn quod**, 574  
**nōnne**, 503, 661  
**nōnnūllī**, 816  
**nōs**, 123, 800, 877  
**noster**, 125-126, 800  
*not because*, 574  
Noun clauses, 637-676, 898, 1013-1015  
Noun constructions, infinitive in, 889-896  
Nouns, 14-71  
    abstract, 729  
    adjectives used as, 693, 845-848  
    case of, 22, 28-30  
    declension of, 23-71, 117  
    expressing emotion, 927  
    gender of, 15-18, 32-33, 35, 38, 46-52, 66, 70  
    genitive with, 681-687, 695-696  
    gerund used as, 864  
    implying action, 684-685, 927  
    infinitives used as, 888-893  
    participles used as, 308  
    predicate, 473, 894, 1006  
    stem of, 24, 27, 61, 71  
    verbal, 864, 888-906  
**novus**, comparison, 99  
**nūllus**, 84, 689  
**num**, 503, 661  
Number, 19-21, 148, 470-471, 474  
Numerals, 112-122  
    cardinal, 112, 114-122  
    compound, 119-122  
    declension, 114-117  
    distributive, 118  
    genitive with, 689, 692  
    ordinal, 113, 118  
Numerical adverbs, 112, 1; 118  
**nūper**, comparison, 111  
**ob**, 783, 971-972  
Object  
    ablative, 785, 1010  
    accusative, 745-754, 1007-1009  
    dative, 738-741, 744, 1010  
    direct, 745, 1007  
    genitive, 684, 700-702, 706-709, 714-721, 1010  
    indirect, 736-737, 1011  
    infinitive as, 889  
Objective genitive, 684-685  
Obligation or necessity, expressions of, 641, 878-882, 891-892  
**obliviscor**, 706, 892  
**obstō**, noun clause after, 645  
**ōdī**, conjugation, 443-448, 451  
*of*, 953, 955, 959  
*on*, 961  
    *on account of*, 972, 992  
    *on behalf of*, 987  
    *on this side of*, 949  
*one*, 824-826  
    *one . . . other (another)*, 822-823  
*onto*, 962  
**oportet**, 591, 641, 673, 891  
*opposite*, 939  
**optō**, noun clause after, 639  
Order of words, 460-469  
Ordinal numerals, 113, 118  
**orior**, 768, 1021  
*other*, 827-830  
*out of*, 918, 958  
*outside*, 960  
*owing to*, 956, 977  
**paenitet**, 714-716, 891  
**parātus**, infinitive with, 906  
**parcō**, dative with, 739-740  
**paritūrus**, 1021  
**pars**, declension, 58  
**particeps**, genitive with, 723

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- Participle**, 907-914  
as adjective, 309, 899, 907, 911  
as noun, 308  
declension, 307-310  
future, 156, 335, 534, 590, 887, 909, 1021  
perfect active, 910, 914  
perfect passive, 155-158, 733, 886, 909  
present, 307-309, 724, 885, 909  
**partim**, with partitive genitive, 690  
**Partitive genitive**, 686-694  
**parum**, 111, 690  
**parvus**, comparison, 99  
**parvi**, 701  
**Passive voice**, 145, 240-306, 322-330  
double accusative, 747, 749, 753-754  
forms of *eō*, 397  
personal signs of, 240-241, 1022  
verbs used impersonally in, 332, 741, 901, 903  
verbs used personally in, 895, 902  
**past**, 984  
**patior**, 334-344; 893, 1  
**penes**, 973  
**per**, 974-978  
**Perfect**, historical, 492  
**Perfect stem**, 154  
**Perfect tense**  
indicative, 492-493, 556-557, 562, 1022  
infinitive, 539, 886, 899  
participle, 155-158, 330, 733, 886, 910, 914  
sequence after, 537-540  
shortened forms, 1023-1024  
subjunctive, 539, 554  
**perficiō**, noun clause after, 638  
**permagnī**, 701  
**Person**, 123-132, 149, 470-471  
**Personal endings**, 160-161, 240-241, 1022  
**Personal pronouns**, 123-124, 127-130, 796, 800-801, 803-807, 812  
**persuādeō**, 639, 739-740  
**pigēt**, 714-716, 891  
**Place**, expressions of, 735, 915-917, 928  
**placeō**, 739-740, 891  
**plēnus**, 723, 776  
**Pluperfect tense**  
indicative, 494-495, 557-558, 562  
subjunctive, 612, 671-672, 674  
**plūs**, 99, 111  
**plūris**, 701, 705, 789  
**portus**, declension, 65  
**Position**  
ablative absolute, 467  
ablatives, 466  
adjectives, 464-465  
adverbs, 466  
imperative, 462  
subordinate clauses, 467-468  
sum, 461  
unusual, 469  
verb, 460-462  
vocative, 463  
**Possession**, dative of, 725  
**Possessive adjectives**, 125-126, 131-132, 465, 710, 800, 802, 811  
**Possessive genitive**, 680, 811  
**Possessive pronouns**, 125-126, 131-132  
**Possible wishes**, 511  
**possum**, 398-401, 411-413, 591, 892  
**post**, 924, 979-980  
**posteaquam**, 556  
**posterior**, comparison, 100  
**postquam**, 556, 558  
**postrēmus**, 100, 851  
**postulō**, noun clause after, 639  
**Potential subjunctive**, 500-501  
**potior**, 721, 785, 875  
**prae**, 784, 981-983  
**praestat**, infinitive with, 891  
**praeter**, 984-985  
**Predicate accusative**, 746, 1009

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- Predicate adjective**  
 agreement of, 474-476, 879, 894, 900  
 diagram, 1006  
 gerundive as, 878-884
- Predicate noun**, 473, 889, 894, 1006
- Prepositional phrases**, 925-931
- Prepositions**, 925-1004
- Present**, historical, 492, 541
- Present perfect**, 493, 540
- Present stem**, 153
- Present tense**  
 imperative, 515  
 indicative, 483-485, 543, 556, 569  
 infinitive, 151, 499, 885, 896, 905  
 participle, 307-309, 724, 885, 909  
 subjunctive, 188-191, 500, 510-511, 514, 516, 518, 555, 670
- Price**, ablative of, 705, 788-789
- Primary sequence**, 525, 527-530, 536
- Primary tenses**, 524
- primus**, 100, 850-851
- Principal parts**, 152-158
- prior**, comparison, 100
- priusquam**, 564-565
- prō**, 986-990
- prohibeō**, 645, 649
- Prohibitions**, 516-517
- Pronouns**, 123-141, 790-844  
 agreement, 479, 616, 619, 621, 888  
 demonstrative, 133-137, 658, 790-799  
 intensive, 138, 808-812  
 interrogative, 140, 503, 660  
 personal, 123-124, 127-130, 796, 800-801, 803-807, 812  
 possessive, 125-126, 131-132, 802  
 reciprocal, 839-840  
 reflexive, 127; 800-807; 877; 890, 1  
 relative, 139, 615-622, 625-636, 778
- Pronunciation**, 2-13, 1018-1019
- prope**, 111, 991
- propinquus**, comparison, 99
- propter**, 580, 783, 992
- prōsum**, dative with, 739-740
- pudet**, 714-716, 891
- puer**, declension, 40, 43
- Purpose**  
 clauses of, 468, 546-549, 625, 637, 639  
 dative of, 729-730  
 expressed by gerundive, 872  
 expressed by supine, 860
- putō**, genitive with, 702
- quaerō**, 639, 661, 752
- quaesō**, conjugation, 459
- quam sī**, 611
- quam ut**, 553
- quamdiū**, 571
- quamquam**, 595
- quamvis**, 596
- quandō**; **quandōquidem**, 577
- quantī**, 701, 705, 789
- Quantity**  
 adjectives of, 112-122, 464, 687, 700-701, 705, 755  
 of syllables, 11-13
- quantum**, 632
- quasi**, 611
- quātenus**, 632
- Questions**  
 deliberative, 509-510  
 direct, 502-508  
 double, 504-505  
 indirect, 534, 655, 660-662  
 rhetorical, 666
- quī**  
 declension, 139  
 in indirect questions, 661  
 indefinite adjective, 841  
 interrogative adjective, 141  
 relative pronoun and adjective, 139, 615-636
- quī modo**, 630



References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- quī quidem**, 630
- quia**, 572-573
- quīdam**, 820-821
- quilibet**, 844
- quīn**, 534, 552, 647-654
- quis**
  - declension, 140
  - indefinite pronoun, 841
  - interrogative adjective, 141, 2
  - interrogative pronoun, 140, 661
- quispiam**, 818
- quisquam**, 843
- quisque**, 831-835
- quīvis**, 844
- quō**, 546-547, 623, 691
  - quō . . . eō, 607
- quoad**, 564, 571, 632
- quod**, 572-576, 579, 631, 657-659
- quōminus**, 646-649
- quoniam**, 572-573
  
- Reason**, in causal clauses, 572-579
- recentior**, 99
- Reciprocal pronouns**, 839-840
- recordor**, 708
- recūsō**, 645, 648
- Reference**, dative of, 726-728
- refert**, genitive with, 709-713
- Reflexive pronouns**, 127, 800-807
  - direct, 803
  - indefinite, 890, 1
  - indirect, 804-805, 877
  - possessive, 131, 802-807
- Rejected reason**, 574-575
- Relation**, tense by, 885-887, 897, 908, 912
- Relative adjective**, 139, 615
- Relative adverbs**, 623
- Relative clauses**, 615-636, 654, 850
  - adversative, 628
  - causal, 627
  - characteristic, 633-636, 654
  - conditional, 629
  - introduced by adverbs, 623
  - limiting, 630-632
  - purpose, 625
  - result, 626
- Relative pronoun**
  - agreement, 616, 619, 621
  - clauses introduced by, 615-636, 778
  - declension, 139
- reliquus**, 851
  - reliquī, 830
  - reliquum est, 638
- rēs**, declension, 69
  - rērum potiri, 721
- resistō**, 645, 739-740
- Respect**, expressions of, 770, 861-863
- Result clauses**, 467, 534, 550-555, 626, 637-638, 653
- Rhetorical questions**, 666
- rogō**, noun clause after, 639
- Roman system of pronunciation**, 1018
- ruitūrus**, 1021
- rūs**, 30, 915-917
  
- saepe**, comparison, 111
- same**, 137, 813
  - the same as*, 608
- satis**, partitive genitive, 690
- secātūrus**, 1021
- Second conjugation**, pages 45, 47, 49, 51, 53-54, 57, 59, 61, 63, 65, 72-74
- Second declension**, 34-44
- Second person**
  - alternate endings, 1022
  - commands in, 515-517
  - indefinite in potential subjunctive, 501
  - pronouns of, 124-125, 800
- Secondary sequence**, 526, 531-534, 537-541
- Secondary tenses**, 524

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- secundum**, 993-995  
**Semi-deponent verbs**, 345  
**senex**, comparison, 99  
**Sense, tense by**, 521-523  
**Sentences**  
     **complex**, 467, 546-676, 897-903, 1013-1017  
     **compound**, 504-505  
     **simple (main clauses)**, 460-463, 498-519, 860-884, 889-892, 904-905, 911-913, 1005-1011  
**Separation**  
     **ablative of**, 766-768  
     **relative with verbs of**, 744  
**Sequence, tense by**, 524-541  
**sequor**, 334-344, 638  
**serviō**, dative with, 739-740  
**servus**, declension, 34  
**seu . . . seu**, 589  
**Shortened verb forms**, 1023-1024  
**sī**, 581-593, 669  
     **sī minus**, 588  
     **sī modo**, 594  
     **sī . . . nōn**, 585-586, 588  
     **sīc . . . ut (sicut)**, 601  
**Signs, personal**, 160-161, 240-241, 1022  
**similis**, superlative of, 96  
**simul ac (atque)**, 556  
**sīn**; **sīn autem**, 587  
     **sīn aliter**; **sīn minus**, 588  
**since**, 578  
**sine**, 929, 996  
**singulī**, 118, 836  
**sinō**, with infinitive, 893, 1; 895  
**siquidem**, 577  
**sive . . . sive**, 589  
**soleō**, 345, 892  
**sōlus**, 84, 635, 850  
**some**, 815-821  
     **some . . . others**, 822  
**Space, extent of**, 761  
**Specification, ablative and accusative of**, 760, 770  
**Statements**, 498, 542-545  
**Stem**  
     **of nouns**, 24, 27, 61, 71  
     **of verbs**, 153-158  
**studeō**, 640, 739-740, 892  
**sub**, 997-1000  
**Subject**  
     **infinitive as**, 889  
     **of finite verb**, 677  
     **of infinitive**, 893, 897, 904  
**Subjective genitive**, 683  
**Subjunctive mood**, 146, 188-193, 522  
     **by attraction**, 613-614  
     **concessive**, 519  
     **hortatory**, 518  
     **in commands (jussive)**, 514, 516-517  
     **in deliberative questions**, 510  
     **in subordinate clauses**, 546-555, 561, 565, 567-568, 573-574, 576, 578-579, 582-589, 592, 594, 596-597, 611-614, 625-631, 633-655, 662, 665  
     **in wishes**, 511-513, 594  
     **jussive**, 514, 516-517  
     **potential**, 500-501  
     **tenses of**, 188-193, 524-541, 667-674  
**Subordinate clauses**  
     **ablative absolute**, 913  
     **accusative with infinitive**, 898-903  
     **adjective**, 615-636, 1017  
     **adverbial**, 546-614, 1016  
     **adversative**, 595-614, 1016  
     **causal**, 572-579, 627  
     **characteristic**, 633-636, 654  
     **comparative**, 599-612  
     **concessive**, 467, 595-598  
     **conditional**, 467, 581-594, 611-612, 614, 629, 669-674  
     **cum**, 542, 559-563, 578, 596  
     **diagrams**, 1013-1017

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- indirect discourse, 663-676
- indirect questions, 660-662
- limiting relative, 630-632
- nē, 642, 645
- noun, 637-676, 898, 1013-1015
- position of, 467-468
- purpose, 468, 546-549, 625, 637, 639
- quīn, 650-654
- quod, 572-576, 579, 657-659
- quōminus, 646-649
- relative, 615-636, 850
- result, 467, 534, 550-555, 626, 637-638, 653
- sī, 581-593, 600, 669
- temporal, 467, 556-571
- tenses in, 191-193, 520-545
- suī, 127; 801; 803-807; 877; 890, 1
- sum (esse)
  - conjugation, 346-361
  - dative with, 731-732
  - gerundive with, 878-882
  - in perfect tenses passive, 242
  - infinitive with, 890
  - position of, 461
- summus, 100, 851
- super, 1001
- superior, comparison, 100
- Superlative adjectives
  - declension of, 102
  - formation of, 90, 92-94, 96, 98-100
  - meaning and use of, 93, 620, 856-859
- Superlative adverbs, 110-111
- Supine
  - formation of, 157
  - in -ū, 861-863
  - in -um, 860
- suprā, 1002
- suscipiō, gerundive with, 883-884
- suus, 131, 802-807
- Syllables, 6-8, 11-13
- Syntax, 460-1004
- taedet, 714-715
- tālis, 551
  - tālis . . . quālis, 604
- tam, 551
  - tam . . . quam, 602
- tametsī, 598
- tamquam; tamquam sī, 611
- tantus, 551
  - tantī, 701, 705, 789
  - tantō . . . quantō, 607
  - tantus . . . quantus, 603
- Temporal clauses, 467, 556-571
- Tense, 147, 188-193, 480-497, 520-545
  - by relation, 885-887, 897, 908, 912
  - by sense, 521-523
  - by sequence, 524-541
  - in general statements, 542-545
  - in main clauses, 189-190, 480-497, 499-501, 510-519
  - in subordinate clauses, 191-193, 520-674
  - of infinitives, 885-887, 896-897, 905
  - of participles, 885-887, 908-909, 912
  - primary, 524-525, 527-530, 536
  - secondary, 524, 526, 531-534, 537-541
- tenus, 1003
- terra, declension, 31
- Third conjugation, pages 45, 47, 49, 51, 53-54, 57, 59, 61, 63, 65, 72-74
- iō verbs, 311-330, 334-344
- Third declension
  - adjectives, 77-83
  - nouns, 45-64, 117
- Third person
  - alternate endings, 1022-1024
  - commands in, 514
  - pronouns of, 127-128, 131-132, 796, 801-807, 812
- this side of, 949
- through, 918, 974-976
- throughout, 974
- till, 936, 963

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

## Time

expressed by verbs, 480-497  
 expressions of, 761, 919-924, 928  
*timeō*, infinitive with, 892  
*to*, 918, 934  
*tot . . . quot*, 605  
*totiēs . . . quotiēs*, 606  
*tōtus*, declension, 84  
*toward*, 936  
*towards*, 735, 934, 939, 941, 957, 998  
*trādō*, 883-884  
*trādūcere*, double accusative, 748-749  
*trājicere*, double accusative, 748-749  
*trāns*, 750, 1004  
*trānsportāre*, double accusative, 748-749  
*trēs*, declension, 116  
*tū*, 124, 800, 877  
*tuus*, 125-126, 800  
  
*ubi*, 542, 556, 623  
     *ubi primum*, 556  
*ūllus*, 84, 843  
*ulterior*, comparison, 100  
*ultimus*, 100, 850-851  
*under*, 997, 999  
     *under the control of*, 973  
*until*, 564  
*ūnus*, 114, 635, 857  
*ūnusquisque*, 836  
*ut*, 546, 550, 556, 596, 637-639, 642-643  
     *quam ut*, 553  
     *sic . . . ut*, 601  
     *ut nē*, 637  
     *ut nōn*, 550, 552, 637, 652  
     *ut primum*, 556  
     *ut si*, 611  
*uter*, 88, 689  
*uterque*, 837  
*utinam*, 511-513  
*ūtor*, 785-787, 875  
*utrum . . . an*, 505

*vel*, 859  
*velut*, 601, 611  
 Verbal nouns and adjectives, 860-914  
 Verbs, 142-459  
     ablative with, 785  
     agreement of, 470-472  
     compound, 638, 738, 744, 748-749  
     conjugation of, 150, 159, 162-459  
     dative with, 738-740, 744, 1010  
     deponent, 334-344, 785-787, 875-876, 910  
     genitive with, 700-721  
     impersonal, 331-333, 638, 641, 659, 709, 714-716, 891  
     infinitive with, 640, 649, 891-892, 895, 897, 901-903  
     intransitive, 739-741, 755-756, 758, 785-787, 875, 881  
     irregular, 346-459  
     notes on, 1020-1025  
     of accusing, 717  
     of advising and warning, 639, 719  
     of asking, 660, 751-754  
     of bewareing, 645  
     of buying and selling, 705, 788  
     of calling, 746-747  
     of demanding, ordering, persuading, 639-640  
     of desiring and wishing, 639-640, 892  
     of emotion, 579; 714-716; 782; 893, 1  
     of fearing, 642-644  
     of hindering and preventing, 645-649, 652  
     of knowing, 660, 897-902  
     of motion, 729, 860  
     of praising and blaming, 576  
     of saying, thinking, and the like, 660, 663, 667, 675, 897-902  
     of separation, 744, 766-768  
     of teaching, 751, 753-754, 892  
     of valuing, 700-704

References are to marginal numbers unless otherwise indicated.

- position of, 460-462
- principal parts, 152-158
- regular, 160-310
- semi-deponent, 345
- tenses of, 147, 188-193, 480-497, 520-545
- transitive, 745-754, 757, 880
- used impersonally, 332-333, 716, 741, 881, 901, 903
- used personally, 880, 895, 902
- vereor**, 334-344, 644
- vescor**, ablative with, 785, 787
- vester**, 125-126, 800
- vetō**, 645; 893, 1; 895
- vetus**, 83, 99
- videor**, with infinitive, 903
- vir**, declension, 40-41
- vītō**, noun clause after, 645
- Vocative, 28, 36, 463, 678
- Voice, 143-145
  - active, 144, 160-239, 312-321
  - passive, 145, 240-306, 322-330
- volō**
  - conjugation, 398, 402-404, 414-418
  - infinitive with, 640; 892; 893, 1
- vōs**, 124, 800, 877
- Vowels, pronunciation of, 2-3, 1018-1019
- when*, 556, 559-563
- whence*, 623, 916
- where*, 623, 915
- while*, 569-570
- whither*, 623, 917
- Wishes, 511-513, 594, 639-640, 892
- with*, 951-952
- within*, 969
- without*, 996
- Words, order of, 460-469





*The* **HENLE LATIN SERIES** *from* Loyola Press

Humanistic insight and linguistic training are the goals of this integrated four-year Latin course. Time-tested and teacher endorsed, this comprehensive program is designed to lead the student systematically through the fundamentals of the language itself and on to an appreciation of selected classic texts.

### **LATIN GRAMMAR**

Designed for student use through all four years of Latin study.

*Paperback*     *ISBN: 0-8294-0112-1*

### **FIRST YEAR LATIN**

*Paperback*     *ISBN: 0-8294-1026-0*

### **SECOND YEAR LATIN**

*Paperback*     *ISBN: 0-8294-1027-9*

### **THIRD YEAR LATIN**

*Paperback*     *ISBN: 0-8294-1028-7*

### **FOURTH YEAR LATIN**

*Paperback*     *ISBN: 0-8294-1029-5*

**LOYOLA PRESS.**

3441 N. ASHLAND AVENUE  
CHICAGO, ILLINOIS 60657  
(800) 621-1008

ISBN-13: 978-0-8294-0112-7  
ISBN-10: 0-8294-0112-1

